

SECOND EDITION

# Sets, Functions and Logic

An introduction to  
abstract mathematics

Keith Devlin



Springer-Science+Business Media, B.V.

# **Sets, Functions and Logic**

# Sets, Functions and Logic

An introduction to abstract mathematics

Second edition

**Keith Devlin**

*Carter Professor of Mathematics, Colby College,  
Maine, USA*



SPRINGER-SCIENCE+BUSINESS MEDIA, B.V.

First edition 1981

Second edition 1992

© 1981, 1992 Keith Devlin

Originally published by Chapman & Hall in 1992

Apart from any fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study, or criticism or review, as permitted under the UK Copyright Designs and Patents Act, 1988, this publication may not be reproduced, stored, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of the publishers, or in the case of reprographic reproduction only in accordance with the terms of the licences issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency in the UK, or in accordance with the terms of licences issued by the appropriate Reproduction Rights Organization outside the UK. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the terms stated here should be sent to the publishers at the London address printed on this page.

The publisher makes no representation, express or implied, with regard to the accuracy of the information contained in this book and cannot accept any legal responsibility or liability for any errors or omissions that may be made.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication data

Devlin, Keith J.

Sets, functions, and logic : an introduction to abstract  
mathematics / Keith Devlin. — 2nd ed.

p. cm. — (Chapman & Hall mathematics)

Includes index.

ISBN 978-0-412-45970-2

ISBN 978-1-4899-2965-5 (eBook)

DOI 10.1007/978-1-4899-2965-5

1. Mathematics. I. Title. II. Series.

QA37.2.D48 1992

510--dc20

91-46835

CIP

# CONTENTS

<b>Preface</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Note for the student</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>1 Use of language in mathematics</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Statements and proof	1
1.2 The language of mathematics: part 1	2
1.3 Properties of the language	9
1.4 Propositional logic	16
1.5 The language of mathematics: part 2	21
1.6 Logic of quantification	25
1.7 Proofs in mathematics	34
1.8 Absolute values	44
1.9 The integers	46
1.10 Mathematical truth	49
<b>2 Set theory</b>	<b>52</b>
2.1 Sets	52
2.2 Operations on sets	56
2.3 Intervals	65
2.4 Arbitrary unions and intersections	66
2.5 Cartesian products	70
<b>3 Functions</b>	<b>73</b>
3.1 The function concept	73
3.2 Examples of functions	75
3.3 One-one and onto functions	81
3.4 Composition and inverse functions	87
3.5 Denumerability	91
3.6 Uncountability	95

<b>4</b>	<b>Relations</b>	<b>100</b>
4.1	Binary relations	100
4.2	Properties of relations	103
4.3	Relations as sets of ordered pairs	105
4.4	Relations as graphs	109
4.5	Equivalence relations	110
4.6	Functions as relations	115
4.7	An example: the reals	117
4.8	Upper bounds. Completeness	119
4.9	Sequences	122
<b>5</b>	<b>Complex numbers</b>	<b>126</b>
5.1	Complex numbers	126
5.2	The complex plane	127
5.3	The complex number $i$	129
5.4	Conjugacy and division	132
5.5	Polar representation	133
5.6	Polar multiplication	135
5.7	Algebraic equations	139
	<b>Where the answers to selected exercises would be</b>	<b>142</b>
	<b>List of symbols</b>	<b>143</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>145</b>

# PREFACE

This book is written for the student beginning ‘abstract pure mathematics’ at the university and college level. Its aim is to provide a solid foundation in the basic logical concepts necessary for most of the subjects encountered in university/college mathematics, including basic college-level algebra and analysis.

The main distinction between most high-school mathematics and college-level mathematics beyond the introductory calculus or discrete mathematics courses offered by most colleges and universities, lies in the degree both of rigor and abstraction required at college level. In general, the student embarking on a college mathematics major program will have had no prior no experience of wholly rigorous definitions and proofs. The result is that, although competent to handle quite difficult problems in, say, the differential or integral calculus, he/she is totally lost when presented with a rigorous definition of limits and derivatives. In the United States, this transition usually takes place between the first-year and sophomore level. In Europe, the change generally accompanies the move from high school to university.

In effect, what the student needs in order to progress further in mathematics is to acquire mastery of what is virtually an entire new language (‘the language of mathematics’) and to adopt an entirely new mode of thinking (‘mathematical thinking’). Needless to say, only the very ablest students come through this process without a great deal of difficulty. This book is intended to assist the student facing this task.

The first version of the book (published in 1981) was originally written to accompany a course I developed at the University of Lancaster in England in the late 1970s. Teaching the same kind of material a decade later in the United States, I looked at the original version, found it wanting, and completely re-wrote it. Practically everything has been changed: the topics have been re-ordered and slightly extended, the treatment of each topic has been changed, and the number of exercises greatly increased. Only the title, aim, and intended audience remained the same. (Unless you also count my expectations of the difficulty the student is likely to encounter on meeting this material for the first time. That has not changed either.)

One major change is that a further ten years have given me sufficient

confidence not only to challenge some of the ‘received wisdom’ in the field, but to completely abandon it. (CAUTION: The remainder of this preface is aimed at instructors, not students. The student would do well not to delve any further into this preface. There is enough to confuse you in the book proper. You have been cautioned!)

The fact is, there are many other books designed for the same audience as this. Some of them may have better prose, or a sexier cover, better or more exercises, or a lower price. But take care. Just as in buying a used car, there are certain things to look for in choosing a book to cover this material. Check out the competition, and if you see *any* of the following then DON’T BUY THAT BOOK!

- A comprehensive treatment of formal logic with emphasis on *modus ponens* in mathematical proofs.
- ‘ $P$  implies  $Q$  iff  $P$  is false or  $Q$  is true.’
- ‘A relation is a set of ordered pairs.’
- ‘A function is a set of ordered pairs such that ...’

The first of the above is quite unnecessary and totally inappropriate for the beginning mathematics student. For one thing, formal mathematical logic can only be really appreciated when the student has a good mastery of abstract mathematics. Secondly, at this stage the aim is to provide the student with a *framework* for abstract pure mathematics. Logic does not provide a framework (at least, not a useful framework) for ‘doing proofs,’ it provides an idealized, abstract *model* of mathematical proofs.

In particular, each of the above three ‘quotations’ (paraphrases of statements you will find in numerous introductory texts) commits the sin of confusing a mathematical *model* of a certain phenomenon with the phenomenon itself. That these errors are currently widespread indicates the success with which concepts of mathematical logic and set theory have permeated the mathematical community. As a mathematical logician and set-theorist, this naturally pleases me. What does not please me is that an essential feature that logicians and set-theorists are aware of does not seem to have accompanied these concepts on their travels to the far reaches of the mathematical community.

Mathematical logic and set theory provide *models* of inference, proof, functions, relations, etc. Very good models. Useful models. Models to be proud of. But models for all that.

One of the aims of an introductory course such as this (perhaps of any course on any subject) is to refine, formalize, and build upon the student’s intuitions. Everyone knows what implication means, what a relation is,



what a function is. These are everyday notions that permeate most aspects of our lives. The precise, mathematical versions of these notions that arise in mathematics are just that: precise, mathematical versions of these notions. They are not some strange alternative notion that just happens to have the same name. And they most certainly are not the same as the useful mathematical *models* that can be constructed for each of these notions.

For example, the usual mathematical *model* of implication is what is known as the *material conditional*. In some ways it is a good model; it exhibits some of the properties of implication. In particular, the truth of a particular material conditional  $[P \Rightarrow Q]$  allows you to infer the truth of  $Q$  from that of  $P$ . But in other ways the material conditional is a poor model of implication. For instance, it renders as true the statement:

[Keith Devlin's birthday is on March 16]  $\Rightarrow$   $[1 + 1 = 2]$

But surely, even though both the antecedent and the consequent here are true, no one seriously believes this is a true *implication*. Implication involves causality in a strong way. The material conditional ignores this altogether, and concentrates entirely on what is left when the causality is removed.

Similar remarks apply to the treatment of functions and relations. (See the text for details.)

Now when the aim is to get moving in mathematics, there is nothing wrong with ignoring complex issues such as causality. All mathematical modeling involves enormous simplification. That is what enables us to make our models formal and precise. But let's be clear to ourselves and our students just what it is we are doing, and let's make sure we do not confuse the model with the thing being modeled. If we do, then at the very least the beginning student will experience enormous confusion when the classroom 'definition' does not accord with his/her intuitions. Worse still, the student might form the opinion that what is being taught is a lot of abstract nonsense bearing no relation to the real world, or even to the rest of mathematics. And that surely is something none of us wants to see happen.

I have striven to make the book as short as possible, while keeping in mind my intention that the weakest student should be able to read through it unaided. This has meant omitting many topics, e.g. a full account of number systems or continuity, each of which could arguably fall within the scope of a book of this nature. However, there are available on the market a number of excellent introductory texts in algebra and analysis that deal with these topics, and in any case they fall quite clearly within the scope of the various subjects concerned, whereas the material presented in this book is, apart from examples, common to practically all of contemporary pure mathematics.

I wrote this new edition during the 1990 Colby College fall semester as I gave the Math 274 course 'Introduction to Abstract Mathematics.' The class provided unwitting assistance to me by reminding me of all the points that traditionally cause problems for the beginner. The manuscript was prepared on an Apple Macintosh IICX computer running the TEXTURES implementation of  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  together with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . I started with an electronic version of the first edition produced during the summer of 1990 by Mehmet Darmar, a Colby mathematics graduate of the Class of 1990, supported by a Colby College faculty assistant summer stipend. Mehmet first created an electronic version of the original book using an optical character reader, and then massaged it into a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document I could work on. The final manuscript was carefully combed for errors by a number of Colby students; Louise Jalbert and Jeffrey Wexler proved particularly eagle-eyed in spotting errors. My thanks to all of them, and to Colby College who provide an excellent environment for the pursuit of knowledge and the development of new educational programs.

Keith Devlin  
Colby College  
November 1991

# Note for the student

Chances are, almost everything in this book will be new to you, and will probably seem very strange. Indeed, you may feel that it is not ‘mathematics’ at all. Be patient. Given time and a fair amount of hard work, this stage will pass.

Do not try to rush through any part of the book, even if at first glance a particular section looks ‘easy.’ This entire book consists of *basic* material required elsewhere (indeed practically *everywhere*) in college-level mathematics. Everything you will find in this book is included because it generally causes problems for the beginner.

Part of the reason for the difficulty students encounter with this material is that it seems unmotivated. It is bound to: the sole motivation is to provide you with the foundation on which to build the mathematics that comes later — mathematics that you do not yet know about!

So take it steadily, and try to *understand* the new concepts as you meet them. There is little in the way of new facts to learn, but a great deal to comprehend! (The actual ‘facts’ contained in this book could be listed on three or four pages of notes.) And try the exercises. As many of them as possible. They are included for a purpose: to aid your understanding.

Discuss any difficulties which arise with your colleagues or (better still: and) with your instructor. Do not give up. Students all around the world managed it last year. Likewise the previous year, and the year before that. So did I. So will you!

KD

# CHAPTER 1

## Use of language in mathematics

### 1.1 Statements and proof

It is not at all easy to formulate a precise definition of (contemporary) pure mathematics (except perhaps to say that it is what contemporary pure mathematicians do for a living!). ‘The science of patterns’ is one fairly recent suggestion that has met with considerable agreement, though this requires a careful interpretation of that word ‘patterns’, and could be misleading to anyone who did not already *know* what mathematics is. But whatever the definition, one thing is clear: in pure mathematics we are concerned with *statements* about *mathematical objects*.

Mathematical objects are things such as: integers, real numbers, sets, functions, etc. Examples of mathematical statements are:

- (1) There are infinitely many prime numbers.
- (2) For every real number  $a$ , the equation  $x^2 + a = 0$  has a real root.
- (3)  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational.
- (4) If  $p(n)$  denotes the number of primes less than or equal to the natural number  $n$ , then as  $n$  becomes very large,  $p(n)$  approaches  $n/\log_e n$ .

Not only are we interested in statements of the above kind, we are, above all, interested in knowing which statements are true and which are false. (The truth or falsity in each case is demonstrated not by measurement or experiment, as in most other sciences, but by a *proof*, of which more in due course). For instance, in the above examples, (1), (3), and (4) are true whereas (2) is false.

The truth of (1) is easily proved. We show that if we list the primes in increasing order as

$$p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots, p_n, \dots$$

then the list must continue for ever. We all know what the first few members of the sequence are:  $p_1 = 2$ ,  $p_2 = 3$ ,  $p_3 = 5$ ,  $p_4 = 7$ ,  $p_5 = 11$ , ... Consider the list up to stage  $n$ :

$$p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots, p_n$$

Let

$$p = (p_1 \cdot p_2 \cdot p_3 \cdot \dots \cdot p_n) + 1$$

If  $p$  is not a prime, there must be a prime  $q < p$  such that  $q$  divides  $p$ . But none of  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  divides  $p$ , for the division of  $p$  by any one of these leaves a remainder of 1. So, either  $p$  must itself be prime, or else there is a prime  $q < p$  that exceeds  $p_n$ . Either way we see that there is a prime greater than  $p_n$ . Since this argument does not depend in any way upon the size of  $n$ , it follows that there are infinitely many primes.

Example (2) can easily be proved to be false. Since the square of no real number is negative, the equation  $x^2 + 1 = 0$  does not have a real root.

We give a proof of (3) later. The only known proofs of example (4) are extremely complicated — far too complicated to be included in an introductory text such as this.

Clearly, before we can prove whether certain statements are true or false, we must be able to understand precisely what the statement says. Above all, mathematics is a very *precise* subject, where exactness of expression is required. This already creates a difficulty, for in real life our use of language is rarely precise. Now, systematically to make the entire English language precise (by defining *exactly* what each word is to mean) would be an impossible task. It would also be unnecessary. It turns out that by deciding exactly what we mean by a few simple words, we can obtain enough precision to enable us to make all the mathematical statements we need. The point is that in mathematics, we do not use all of the English language. Indeed, when we restrict our attention to mathematical *statements* themselves (as opposed to our attempts to explain them), we need only a very small part of the English language.

## 1.2 The language of mathematics: part 1

We shall make precise a few key words of the English language that enable us to formulate, in an exact and unambiguous fashion, any mathematical concept we wish to consider. One difficulty for the beginner is that the mathematical usage of some of these words is not quite the same as the everyday, non-mathematical usage, but there is no such problem with the first word we consider:

*and*

We need to be able to assert that two events simultaneously hold. For instance, we may wish to say that  $\pi$  is greater than 3 *and* less than 3.2. So the word '*and*' is indispensable. Sometimes, in order to achieve a completely symbolic expression, we introduce an abbreviation for '*and*'. The most common ones are

$$\wedge, \&$$

Thus, the expression

$$(\pi > 3) \wedge (\pi < 3.2)$$

says:

$$\pi \text{ is greater than } 3 \text{ and } \pi \text{ is less than } 3.2$$

In other words,  $\pi$  lies between 3 and 3.2

There is no possible source of confusion when we use the word '*and*'. If  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are any two mathematical statements,

$$\phi \wedge \psi$$

is the joint assertion (which may or may not be a valid assertion) of *both*  $\phi$  *and*  $\psi$ .

A possible ambiguity does arise in the case of our next word:

$$\text{or}$$

We wish to be able to assert that event  $A$  occurs *or* event  $B$  occurs. For instance, we might want to say

$$(\text{either}) \text{ the equation } x^2 + a = 0 \text{ has a real root } \text{or} \ a > 0$$

or perhaps we want to say

$$ab = 0 \text{ if } a = 0 \text{ or } b = 0$$

Now, the use of '*or*' is different in these two examples. In the first assertion there is no possibility of both eventualities occurring at once. Moreover, the meaning is unchanged regardless of whether or not we include the initial word '*either*'. In the second case, it is quite possible for *both*  $a$  and  $b$  to be zero. Even if we were to alter our second assertion by inserting the word '*either*', we would still read it as allowing for both possibilities to occur at once, since the use of the word '*either*' only serves to strengthen the exclusivity in an assertion *where it is already clear* that there is no possibility of both.

But mathematics has no place for potential ambiguity in the meaning of such a commonly-used word as '*or*', so we must choose one or the other

meaning. It turns out to be more convenient to opt for the inclusive use. Accordingly, whenever we use the word 'or' in mathematics we always mean the 'inclusive or'. If  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are mathematical statements,  $\phi$  or  $\psi$  asserts that at least one of  $\phi, \psi$  is valid. We often use the symbol

$$\vee$$

to denote (*inclusive*) *or*. Thus

$$\phi \vee \psi$$

means that *at least one of*  $\phi, \psi$  is valid.

For instance, the following statement is true:

$$(3 < 5) \vee (1 = 0)$$

Our next word arises by virtue of our need to negate statements, to say that a particular statement is false. So we need to be sure of our use of the word

*not*

If  $\psi$  is any statement,

$$\text{not-}\psi$$

claims that  $\psi$  is false. Thus, if  $\psi$  is a true statement,  $\text{not-}\psi$  is a false statement, and if  $\psi$  is a false statement,  $\text{not-}\psi$  is a true statement. Nowadays, the symbol most commonly used for 'not' is

$$\neg$$

but older texts sometimes use the symbol  $\sim$ .

Although our usage of the word 'not' accords with most common usage, the negation concept is sometimes used very loosely in everyday speech. For instance, there is no confusion about the meaning of the statement

$$\neg(\pi < 3)$$

This clearly means

$$\pi \geq 3$$

(which, incidentally, is the same as  $(\pi = 3) \vee (\pi > 3)$ ). But consider the statement

All domestic cars are badly made.

What is the negation of this statement? For instance, is it any one of the following?

- (a) All domestic cars are well made.
- (b) All domestic cars are not badly made.
- (c) At least one domestic car is well made.
- (d) At least one domestic car is not badly made.

A common mistake is for the beginner to choose (a). But this is easily seen to be wrong. Our original statement is surely false. Hence the *negation* of this statement will be true. But (a) is certainly not true! Neither is (b) true. So realistic considerations lead us to conclude that if the correct answer is to be found in the above list, then it has to be either (c) or (d). (We shall later see how we can eliminate (a) and (b) by a formal mathematical argument.)

In point of fact, both (c) and (d) can be said to represent the negation of our original statement. (Any well made domestic car testifies the *truth* of both (c) and (d).) Which do you think most closely corresponds to the negation of our original statement?

We shall return to this example later, but before we leave it for now, let us remark that the original statement is only concerned with domestic cars. Hence its negation will only deal with domestic cars. So the negation will not involve any reference to *foreign* cars. For instance, the statement

All foreign cars are well made

cannot be the negation of our original statement. Indeed, knowing whether our original statement is true or false in no way helps us to decide the truth or falsity of the above statement. To be sure, 'foreign' is the negation of 'domestic', but we are trying to negate the assertion as a whole, not some adjective occurring in it.

So far we have considered three basic words and made their meaning precise: *and* (symbols:  $\wedge$ , &), *or* (symbol:  $\vee$ ), and *not* (symbol:  $\neg$ ). We refer to these operations as '*conjunction*', '*disjunction*', and '*negation*', respectively. Thus  $\phi \wedge \psi$  is the *conjunction* of the statements  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ ,  $\phi \vee \psi$  is their *disjunction*, and  $\neg\phi$  is the *negation* of  $\phi$ .

The fourth notion we investigate is the one that causes by far the most initial confusion: *implication*. In mathematics we frequently use an expression of the form

$$(*) \quad \phi \text{ implies } \psi$$



Indeed implication provides the means by which we prove statements, starting from initial observations or axioms. The question is, what is the meaning of an assertion of the form  $(*)$  ?

It would not be unreasonable to assume it means the following:

*if  $\phi$  is true, then  $\psi$  has to be true as well*

But suppose that for  $\phi$  we take the true assertion ' $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational' and for  $\psi$  we take the true assertion ' $0 < 1$ '. Then is the expression  $(*)$  true? In other words, does the irrationality of  $\sqrt{2}$  imply that 0 is less than 1? Of course it does not. There is no real connection between the two statements  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  in this case.

Even more dramatic, what about the implication

(Julius Caesar is dead) *implies*  $(1 + 1 = 2)$

Again, what can be said about the truth of  $(*)$  if  $\phi$  is false? Does the expression have any meaning in such a case?

It all seems very confusing. The problem is that the concept of implication involves not just truth (as was the case with the words '*and*', '*or*', '*not*' we have considered already), but also *causation*. When we say that ' $\phi$  implies  $\psi$ ', we mean that  $\phi$  somehow causes or brings about  $\psi$ . This certainly has the consequence that the truth of  $\psi$  follows from the truth of  $\phi$ , but truth alone does not fully capture what is going on.

For our present purposes, namely the introduction of some precision in our use of language in mathematics, the complex issue of causation is not one that we wish to consider. So what we shall do is pull apart the notion of implication into two parts, the truth part and the causation part, and discard the latter. The part that we are left with, namely the 'truth part' of implication, is generally known as the *conditional*, or sometimes the *material conditional*. Thus we have the relationship:

implication = conditional + causation

We shall use the notation

$$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$$

to denote the truth-value, *conditional* part of the implication  $(*)$ . (Modern logic texts generally use a single arrow,  $\rightarrow$ , instead of  $\Rightarrow$ , but to avoid confusion with the notation for functions we shall introduce later, we shall adopt the more old-fashioned, double-arrow notation here.)

Any expression of the form

$$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$$

will be referred to as a *conditional expression*, or simply a *conditional*. We refer to  $\phi$  as the *antecedent* of the conditional and  $\psi$  as the *consequent*. The truth or falsity of a conditional will be *defined* entirely in terms of the truth or falsity of the antecedent and the consequent. That is to say, whether or not the conditional expression  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  is true will depend entirely upon the truth or falsity of  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ , taking no account of whether or not there is any meaningful connection between  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ .

As you might expect, such a definition, ignoring as it does a highly significant aspect of the notion of implication, is likely to have consequences that are at the very least counter-intuitive, and possibly even absurd. However (and this is why the approach we adopt turns out to be a useful one), in all cases where there *is* a meaningful and genuine implication  $\phi$  *implies*  $\psi$ , the conditional  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  will accord with that implication.

That is to say, in defining the conditional the way we do, we do not end up with a notion that *contradicts* the notion of (genuine) implication. Rather we obtain a notion that *extends* (genuine) implication to cover those cases where a claim of implication is meaningless (namely, cases where the antecedent is false or there is no real connection between the antecedent and the consequent). In all cases where  $\phi$  actually does imply  $\psi$ , the truth value of the conditional will be the same as the truth value of the actual implication.

It is the fact that the conditional always has a well-defined truth value that makes this notion important in mathematics, since in mathematics we cannot afford to have statements with undefined truth values floating around.

Now, ignoring all questions of causality, the truth-value aspect of implication seems straightforward enough when the antecedent is true. If  $\phi$  is true and ' $\phi$  implies  $\psi$ ' is a valid implication, then  $\psi$  will be true. Thus the conditional  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  should be 'true' if both the antecedent and consequent are true. But what about the case where the antecedent is false?

To deal with this case, we consider not the notion of implication, but its negation. We extract the causation-free, truth-value part of the statement ' $\phi$  does not imply  $\psi$ ', which we shall write as

$$\phi \nRightarrow \psi$$

Leaving aside all question of whether there is a 'meaningful' causal relation between  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ , and concentrating solely on truth values, how can we be sure that  $\phi \nRightarrow \psi$  is a valid statement? More precisely, how should the truth or falsity of the assertion  $\phi \nRightarrow \psi$  depend upon the truth or falsity of  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ ?

Well,  $\phi$  will *not* imply  $\psi$  if it is the case that *although*  $\phi$  is true,  $\psi$  is *nevertheless* false.

Please read that last sentence again.

Now once more.

Okay, now we are ready to continue.<sup>1</sup>

We therefore define  $\phi \nrightarrow \psi$  to be true precisely in case  $\phi$  is true and  $\psi$  is false.

Having defined the truth or falsity of  $\phi \nrightarrow \psi$ , we obtain that of  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  by just taking the negation. The conditional  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  will be true exactly when  $\phi \nrightarrow \psi$  is false. Examination of this definition leads to the following conclusions:

$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  will be true whenever one of the following holds:

- (1)  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are both true.
- (2)  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are both false.
- (3)  $\phi$  is false and  $\psi$  is true.

The points to note about this are:

- (a) We are *defining* a notion that only captures part of what ‘implies’ means.
- (b) To avoid difficulties, we base our definition solely on the notion of truth and falsity.
- (c) Our definition agrees with our intuition concerning implication in all ‘meaningful’ cases.

Closely related to implication is the notion of ‘equivalence’. Two statements  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are said to be (*logically*) *equivalent* if each implies the other. The analogous, formal notion defined in terms of the conditional is known as the *biconditional*. We shall write the biconditional as

$$\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$$

(Modern logic texts use  $\phi \leftrightarrow \psi$ ). The biconditional is defined to be an abbreviation for the conjunction

$$(\phi \Rightarrow \psi) \wedge (\psi \Rightarrow \phi)$$

Looking back at the definition of the conditional, this means that the biconditional  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$  will be true if  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are both true or both false; otherwise (i.e. if exactly one of  $\phi, \psi$  is true and the other false) the biconditional will be false. The three remarks (a), (b), (c) above apply to the connection

---

<sup>1</sup>On second thoughts, maybe you should read it a fourth time just to be sure.

between the biconditional and equivalence just as to the relation between the conditional and implication.

### Exercises 1.2

(1) Simplify the following statements:

- (a)  $(\pi > 0) \wedge (\pi < 10)$
- (b)  $(3 < 4) \wedge (3 < 6)$
- (c)  $(e < 4) \wedge (e^2 < 9)$
- (d)  $(\pi > 0) \vee (\pi > 1)$
- (e)  $(\pi < 0) \vee (\pi > 0)$

(2) Which of the following are true and which are false?

- (a)  $(\pi^2 > 2) \Rightarrow (\pi > 1.4)$
- (b)  $(\pi^2 < 0) \Rightarrow (\pi = 3)$
- (c)  $(\pi^2 > 0) \Rightarrow (1 + 2 = 4)$
- (d)  $(\pi < \pi^2) \Rightarrow (\pi = 5)$
- (e)  $(e^2 \geq 0) \Rightarrow (e < 0)$
- (f)  $\neg[(5 \text{ is an integer}) \Rightarrow (5^2 \geq 1)]$
- (g) (the area of a circle of radius 1 is  $\pi$ )  $\Rightarrow$  (3 is a prime)
- (h) If squares have three sides, then triangles have four sides.
- (i) If elephants can climb trees, then 3 is an irrational number.
- (j) If Euclid's birthday was July 4, then rectangles have four sides.

## 1.3 Properties of the language

So far we have taken five common concepts, *and*, *or*, *not*, *implies*, *equivalence*, and made their meanings precise. (In the case of the last two on this list it would be more accurate to say that we have defined precise, formal counterparts to these notions.) Thus, whenever precision is necessary, we can use these words with absolute conviction: there should be no possible cause for confusion (except due to misunderstanding of the concepts, a problem that can only be overcome by experience on the part of the student). Of course, our precise 'language of mathematics' will include other symbols or words such as  $\leq$ ,  $=$ , *less than*,  $\pi$ ,  $e$ , *function*, etc., but these all have a precise definition already. It is only those parts of the

'language' that we take from common usage that need clarification and eventual definition.

There are two further concepts that we take from everyday speech, but we postpone looking at those until later. In the meantime we consider the language developed so far. That is, we investigate the consequences of our formal definitions, and also introduce some associated terminology that is often used.

We consider first the behavior of negation. Our first observation is very simple. We note that  $\neg(\neg\phi)$  is equivalent to (i.e. means the same as)  $\phi$ .

Figuring out the effect of negation on conjunctions and disjunctions takes a bit more effort. For instance, what is the meaning of an expression such as

$$\neg(\phi \wedge \psi)$$

where  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are given mathematical statements?

Well,  $\phi \wedge \psi$  means 'both  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are true', so  $\neg(\phi \wedge \psi)$  means it is not the case that both  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are true. Now, if they are not both true, then at least one of them must be false. But to say at least one of  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  is false is clearly the same as saying that at least one of  $\neg\phi$  and  $\neg\psi$  is true (by our definition of negation). By our meaning for '*or*', this can be expressed as  $(\neg\phi) \vee (\neg\psi)$ . Thus

$$\neg(\phi \wedge \psi) \text{ and } (\neg\phi) \vee (\neg\psi)$$

are equivalent (i.e. mean the same).

Likewise it can be shown (exercise: carry out the required logical argument) that

$$\neg(\phi \vee \psi) \text{ and } (\neg\phi) \wedge (\neg\psi)$$

are equivalent.

Thus, negation has the affect that it changes  $\vee$  into  $\wedge$  and changes  $\wedge$  into  $\vee$ . Knowing this now, you should re-read the above proof that  $\neg(\phi \wedge \psi)$  and  $(\neg\phi) \vee (\neg\psi)$  are the same.

The affect of negation on implication (more precisely, on conditionals) is already bound up with manner in which we *defined* the conditional.

By our definition

$$\neg(\phi \Rightarrow \psi)$$

is the same as

$$\phi \wedge (\neg\psi)$$

and (hence)

$$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$$

is the same as

$$(\neg\phi) \vee \psi$$

Of course, once we have made the meanings of various words precise, and introduced symbolic abbreviations, we are free to alter our notation if it seems helpful. For instance, we usually write

$$\phi \not\Rightarrow \psi$$

instead of

$$\neg(\phi \Rightarrow \psi)$$

Likewise, we use the more familiar

$$x \neq y$$

instead of

$$\neg(x = y)$$

Another example: in dealing with real numbers, we usually write, say,

$$a < x \leq b$$

instead of

$$(a < x) \wedge (x \leq b)$$

But we would probably write

$$\neg(a < x \leq b)$$

instead of

$$a \not< x \not\leq b$$

as the latter would appear to be rather unclear as to its meaning. (We could make this precise, but it still seems rather inelegant, and as such is best avoided.)

There is some terminology associated with  $\Rightarrow$  and  $\Leftrightarrow$  that should be mastered straight away as it pervades all mathematical discussion.

We can read the conditional  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  in each of the following ways:

- (1)  $\phi$  implies  $\psi$
- (2) if  $\phi$  then  $\psi$
- (3)  $\phi$  is sufficient for  $\psi$
- (4)  $\phi$  only if  $\psi$

(5)  $\psi$  if  $\phi$

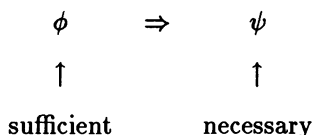
(6)  $\psi$  whenever  $\phi$

(7)  $\psi$  is necessary for  $\phi$

The first four all mention  $\phi$  before  $\psi$ , and of these the first three seem obvious enough. But caution is required in the case of (4). Notice the contrast between (4) and (5) as far as the order of  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  is concerned. Beginners often encounter considerable difficulty in appreciating the distinction between 'if' and 'only if'.

Likewise, the use of the word 'necessary' in (7) often causes confusion. Notice that to say that  $\psi$  is a necessary condition for  $\phi$  does not mean that  $\psi$  on its own is enough to guarantee  $\phi$ . Rather what it says is that  $\psi$  will have to hold *before there can even be any question of  $\phi$  holding*.

The following diagram might help you remember the distinction between 'necessary' and 'sufficient':



(Think of the word 'sun'. This will remind you of the order.)

The following ways of reading  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$  follow now from the definition of  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$  as  $(\phi \Rightarrow \psi) \wedge (\psi \Rightarrow \phi)$ :

(1)  $\phi$  is equivalent to  $\psi$

(2)  $\phi$  is necessary and sufficient for  $\psi$

(3)  $\phi$  if and only if  $\psi$

A common abbreviation for the phrase 'if and only if' is 'iff' (or occasionally 'iffi'). Thus we often write

$$\phi \text{ iff } \psi$$

Since we have reduced all of our logical connectives ( $\wedge, \vee, \neg, \Rightarrow, \Leftrightarrow$ ) to issues of truth and falsity alone, and not to meaning, it is possible to represent (or illustrate) them by means of a table: a *truth table*. We introduce two symbols: T to denote 'true' and F to denote 'false'. The behavior/definition of  $\phi \wedge \psi$  can then be illustrated by the table:

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \wedge \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

In the first two columns appear all the possible combinations of values of T and F that the two statement  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  can have. In the third column we give the value  $\phi \wedge \psi$  achieves according to each assignment of T or F to  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ . Thus, we see that  $\phi \wedge \psi$  is T only when both  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are T.

For  $\phi \vee \psi$  we have the table

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \vee \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

Again, the definition of  $\neg\phi$  can be represented thus:

$\phi$	$\neg\phi$
T	F
F	T

For  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  we have:

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

One can go on to construct truth tables for more complicated expressions. Consider, for example, the expression  $(\phi \wedge \psi) \vee (\neg\phi)$ . We can build its table column by column as follows:

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \wedge \psi$	$\neg\phi$	$(\phi \wedge \psi) \vee (\neg\phi)$
T	T	T	F	T
T	F	F	F	F
F	T	F	T	T
F	F	F	T	T

We can also draw up tables for expressions such as  $(\phi \wedge \psi) \vee \theta$ , but if there are  $n$  'primitive statements' involved there will be  $2^n$  rows in the table, so already  $(\phi \wedge \psi) \vee \theta$  needs 8 rows!



Truth tables can be useful in checking that two rather complex statements are equivalent. For, by our definition of equivalence, two statements will be equivalent if they have the same truth table. For example, we can demonstrate the equivalence of

$$\neg(\phi \wedge \psi) \quad \text{and} \quad (\neg\phi) \vee (\neg\psi)$$

as follows:

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \wedge \psi$	*	$\neg(\phi \wedge \psi)$	$\neg\phi$	$\neg\psi$	*	$(\neg\phi) \vee (\neg\psi)$
T	T	T		F	F	F		F
T	F	F		T	F	T		T
F	T	F		T	T	F		T
F	F	F		T	T	T		T

Since the two columns marked \* are identical, we know that the two expressions are equivalent.

### Exercises 1.3

- (1) By a *denial* of a statement  $\phi$  we mean any statement equivalent to  $\neg\phi$ . Give a useful denial of each of the following statements.
  - (a) 34,159 is a prime number.
  - (b) Roses are red and violets are blue.
  - (c) If there are no hamburgers, I'll have a hot-dog.
  - (d) Fred will go but he will not play.
  - (e) The number  $x$  is either negative or greater than 10.
  - (f) We will win the first game or the second.
- (2) Which of the following conditions is *necessary* for the natural number  $n$  to be divisible by 6?
  - (a)  $n$  is divisible by 3.
  - (b)  $n$  is divisible by 9.
  - (c)  $n$  is divisible by 12.
  - (d)  $n = 24$ .
  - (e)  $n^2$  is divisible by 3.
  - (f)  $n$  is even and divisible by 3.
- (3) In (2), which conditions are *sufficient* for  $n$  to be divisible by 6?

- (4) In (2), which conditions are *necessary and sufficient* for  $n$  to be divisible by 6?
- (5) Let  $m, n$  denote any two natural numbers. Prove that  $mn$  is odd iff  $m$  and  $n$  are odd.
- (6) With reference to (5), is it true that  $mn$  is even iff  $m$  and  $n$  are even?
- (7) Show that  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$  is equivalent to  $(\neg\phi) \Leftrightarrow (\neg\psi)$ . How does this relate to your answers to questions (5) and (6) above?
- (8) Draw truth tables to illustrate the following:
  - (a)  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$
  - (b)  $\phi \Rightarrow (\psi \vee \theta)$
- (9) Use truth tables to prove that the following are equivalent:
  - (a)  $\neg(\phi \Rightarrow \psi)$  and  $\phi \wedge (\neg\psi)$
  - (b)  $\phi \Rightarrow (\psi \wedge \theta)$  and  $(\phi \Rightarrow \psi) \wedge (\phi \Rightarrow \theta)$
  - (c)  $(\phi \vee \psi) \Rightarrow \theta$  and  $(\phi \Rightarrow \theta) \wedge (\psi \Rightarrow \theta)$
- (10) Verify the equivalences in (b) and (c) above by means of a logical argument. (So, in the case of (b), for example, you must show that assuming  $\phi$  and deducing  $\psi \wedge \theta$  is the same as both deducing  $\psi$  from  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  from  $\phi$ .)
- (11) Use truth tables to prove the equivalence of  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  and  $(\neg\psi) \Rightarrow (\neg\phi)$
- (12) Use truth tables to show that  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  and  $\psi \Rightarrow \phi$  are not equivalent. Give an example of statements  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  such that  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  is true but  $\psi \Rightarrow \phi$  is false.
- (13) Connected with question (12), which of the following are equivalent?
  - (a)  $\phi \wedge \psi$  and  $\psi \wedge \phi$
  - (b)  $\phi \vee \psi$  and  $\psi \vee \phi$
- (14) Express the connective

$\phi$  unless  $\psi$

in terms of the standard propositional connectives.

## 1.4 Propositional logic

*This section strays a little way off our main line of development, and at the first reading of the book, may be read in a cursory fashion.*

Formal logic is the mathematical study of precisely defined languages, taking into account both their *syntax*, that is to say, their grammatical structure, and their *semantics*, or meaning. The study of language usage in mathematics undertaken in the previous two sections leads to an important branch of formal logic known as *propositional logic*. The main goal in studying propositional logic as far as the mathematician is concerned is to analyse the part played by the logical connectives in mathematical proof and mathematical truth.

As the name suggests, *propositional logic* studies the logical properties of propositions. Formally, we define a *proposition* to be any statement that is either true or false (i.e. that has a 'truth value').

So, for example, the following are all propositions:

- (a)  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational.
- (b)  $\sqrt{3}$  is rational.
- (c) The world will end on June 29, 3415.
- (d) Pythagoras had an egg for his breakfast on his tenth birthday.

Notice that it might well be the case that we have no way of knowing whether or not a particular proposition is true or not. In the case of examples (a) and (b) we do know ((a) is true, (b) is false), but in the case of example (c) we are unlikely to know until the date in question (at least if this particular event does not occur sooner than claimed), and it is probably the case that we shall never know whether statement (d) is true or not.

Examples of sentences that are *not* propositions are:

- (a) What is the time?
- (b) Leave the room now!
- (c)  $x^2 > 8$
- (d) She told him.

Examples (a) and (b) are clearly not the kind of sentences that truth or falsity applies to, being a question and a command, respectively. Sentence (c) fails to be a sentence because  $x$  is a variable, and substituting different

values for  $x$  can produce different truth values for the resulting sentence, and sentence (d) fails to be a proposition for a similar reason.

In *propositional logic* we start with a collection  $P_1, P_2, P_3, \dots$  of *propositional symbols*. The idea is that these can denote arbitrary *propositions*. As their name suggests, the propositional symbols are not subject to analysis by the logic: they are just symbols. The only feature of these symbols that is relevant to propositional logic is that they may each be assigned a *truth value*, either T or F ('true' or 'false').

In addition to the propositional symbols, we introduce the following *logical connectives*:  $\wedge$  (*conjunction*),  $\vee$  (*disjunction*),  $\neg$  (*negation*),  $\Rightarrow$  (*the conditional*), and  $\Leftrightarrow$  (*the biconditional*). These may be used to combine propositional symbols to form *propositional forms* (or *well-formed formulas*) in the obvious (to readers who have got this far in our account) fashion.

The truth-functional behavior of these logical connectives (i.e. how the truth value of a conjunction, disjunction, negation, conditional, and biconditional is related to the truth values of its component propositional symbols) is defined by the truth tables listed in Section 1.3.

It follows that the truth table of any given propositional form displays everything there is to know about that propositional form (at least as far as propositional logic is concerned). The function displayed by the truth table (i.e. the function that relates truth values of the propositional symbols to the resulting truth value of the entire form) is known as the *truth function determined by* that form.

For example, the truth function determined by the propositional form  $P_1 \vee P_2$  gives the value T if either of the symbols  $P_1, P_2$  is given the value T, and gives the value F if both  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are given the value F.

Propositional logic investigates the way the *structure*<sup>2</sup> of a propositional form affects the truth function of that form.

Thus in propositional logic, the propositional symbols and the propositional forms are not *about* anything, either anything in the world or anything in mathematics. Our interest is purely the internal mechanics of the system, how the various connectives fit together.

The subject is thus analogous to the algebra of polynomial expressions, where the interest is in the manipulation of certain kinds of (symbolic) algebraic expressions (polynomials), with no values or meaning attached to the variables involved.

Now, the main interest in the algebra of polynomial expressions is when two expressions are 'algebraically equivalent', in the sense that one can be reduced (algebraically) to the other. (For example,  $x^2 - y^2$  is reducible to  $(x + y)(x - y)$ .)

---

<sup>2</sup>How it is built up from propositional symbols using the various connectives.

Analogously, in propositional logic the main interest is when two propositional forms are 'logically equivalent'.

We say two propositional forms are (*logically*) *equivalent* if and only if they have exactly the same truth function (i.e. if and only if they produce exactly the same truth values whenever truth values are assigned to all the propositional symbols).

**Theorem 1.4.1** Let  $\phi, \psi, \theta$  be propositional forms. Then:

- (a)  $\phi \wedge \psi$  is logically equivalent to  $\psi \wedge \phi$
- (b)  $\phi \vee \psi$  is logically equivalent to  $\psi \vee \phi$
- (c)  $\neg\phi$  is logically equivalent to  $\phi$
- (d)  $(\phi \wedge \psi) \wedge \theta$  is equivalent to  $\phi \wedge (\psi \wedge \theta)$
- (e)  $(\phi \vee \psi) \vee \theta$  is equivalent to  $\phi \vee (\psi \vee \theta)$
- (f)  $\neg(\phi \wedge \psi)$  is equivalent to  $\neg\phi \vee \neg\psi$
- (g)  $\neg(\phi \vee \psi)$  is equivalent to  $\neg\phi \wedge \neg\psi$
- (h)  $\phi \wedge (\psi \vee \theta)$  is equivalent to  $(\phi \wedge \psi) \vee (\phi \wedge \theta)$
- (i)  $\phi \vee (\psi \wedge \theta)$  is equivalent to  $(\phi \vee \psi) \wedge (\phi \vee \theta)$
- (j)  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  is equivalent to  $\neg\phi \vee \psi$

*Proof:* The proofs are all straightforward truth table computations, and are left as an exercise.  $\square$

A propositional form that has the truth value T for all assignments of truth values to its component propositional symbols is said to be a *tautology*. A simple example of a tautology is the propositional form

$$P \vee \neg P$$

for any propositional symbol  $P$ .

A propositional form that takes only the truth value F is called a *contradiction*. For example, the form

$$P \wedge \neg P$$

is a contradiction.

**Theorem 1.4.2** Let  $\phi, \psi$  be propositional forms. Then  $\phi$  is equivalent to  $\psi$  if and only if the biconditional form  $\phi \Leftrightarrow \psi$  is a tautology.

*Proof:* Another straightforward truth table argument that we shall leave as an exercise.  $\square$

The *contrapositive* of a conditional form  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  is the conditional

$$\neg\psi \Rightarrow \neg\phi$$

The following result is the logical basis for the mathematical concept of proof by contrapositive.

**Theorem 1.4.3** Any conditional is equivalent to its contrapositive.

*Proof:* Another truth table exercise for the reader.  $\square$

The contrapositive of a conditional should not be confused with the *converse*. The *converse* of  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  is the conditional  $\psi \Rightarrow \phi$ . There is in general no connection between the truth value of a conditional and its converse.

### Exercises 1.4

- (1) Identify the antecedent and the consequent in each of the following conditionals:
  - (a) If apples are red then oranges are green.
  - (b) The differentiability of a function  $f$  is sufficient for  $f$  to be continuous.
  - (c) A function  $f$  is bounded if  $f$  is integrable.
  - (d) A sequence  $s$  is bounded whenever  $s$  is convergent.
  - (e) It is necessary that  $n$  is prime in order for  $2^n - 1$  to be prime.
  - (f) The team wins only when Karl is playing.
  - (g) When Karl plays the team wins.
  - (h) The team wins when Karl plays.
- (2) Write the converse and contrapositive of each conditional in (1).
- (3) Construct truth tables for the following propositional forms
  - (a)  $(P \wedge Q) \vee \neg Q$
  - (b)  $(P \wedge Q) \vee (P \wedge R)$
  - (c)  $P \wedge (Q \vee \neg Q)$
  - (d)  $(P \wedge Q) \Rightarrow (P \vee Q)$

- (e)  $P \Rightarrow (Q \Rightarrow P)$
- (4) Let  $\dot{\vee}$  denote the 'exclusive or' that corresponds to the English expression 'either one or the other but not both'. Construct a truth table for this connective.
- (5) Which of the following pairs of propositional forms are equivalent?
- $\neg(P \vee Q)$  ,  $\neg P \wedge \neg Q$
  - $\neg P \vee \neg Q$  ,  $\neg(P \vee \neg Q)$
  - $\neg(P \wedge Q)$  ,  $\neg P \vee \neg Q$
  - $\neg(P \Rightarrow (Q \wedge R))$  ,  $\neg(P \Rightarrow Q) \vee \neg(P \Rightarrow R)$
  - $P \Rightarrow (Q \Rightarrow R)$  ,  $(P \wedge Q) \Rightarrow R$
- (6) If  $P$  and  $Q$  are true and  $R$  and  $S$  are false, which of the following are true?
- $P \vee (R \wedge S)$
  - $(\neg R \wedge \neg S) \vee (P \Rightarrow Q)$
  - $(P \wedge S) \Rightarrow R$
  - $(P \Rightarrow R) \Rightarrow S$
  - $P \Rightarrow (R \Rightarrow S)$
- (7) Which of the following is a tautology, which is a contradiction, and which is neither?
- $(P \wedge Q) \vee (\neg P \wedge \neg Q)$
  - $\neg(P \wedge \neg P)$
  - $(P \wedge Q) \vee (P \wedge \neg Q) \vee (\neg P \wedge Q) \vee (\neg(P \wedge \neg Q))$
  - $(P \vee Q) \Rightarrow [(P \wedge Q) \vee (P \wedge \neg Q) \vee (\neg P \wedge Q)]$
  - $P \Rightarrow (Q \Rightarrow P)$
  - $[(P \Rightarrow Q) \wedge (Q \Rightarrow R)] \Rightarrow (P \Rightarrow R)$
- (8) Prove Theorem 1.4.1.
- (9) Prove Theorem 1.4.2.
- (10) Prove Theorem 1.4.3.
- (11) Give, if possible, an example of a true conditional sentence for which
- the converse is true.
  - the converse is false.
  - the contrapositive is true.
  - the contrapositive is false.

## 1.5 The language of mathematics: part 2

And so to the final part of our investigation of language. We introduce the two *quantifiers*:

*there exists* , *for all*

In mathematics we frequently make *existence* assertions. For example

the equation  $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$  has a real root

expresses an existence claim. The existential nature of this assertion can be made more explicit by re-writing it in the form:

*there exists* a real number  $x$  such that  $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$

Or again

$\sqrt{2}$  is rational

also expresses an existence claim, though it certainly does not look much like an existence statement until we write it in the form

*there exist* natural numbers  $p$  and  $q$  such that  $\sqrt{2} = p/q$

The first example here is a true statement (take  $a = -1$ ); the second is false (as we prove later). (Incidentally, the second example is not unique in having its existential nature hidden: there are many mathematical statements which are really existence assertions, but which do not appear so on the surface.)

We use the symbol

$\exists x$

to mean

there exists an  $x$  such that ...

Thus the above two examples may be written symbolically as:

- $\exists x[x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0]$
- $\exists p \exists q[\sqrt{2} = p/q]$

But there is a potential problem with this notation. In the original English-language sentences we specified the kinds of objects involved in these quantifiers, real numbers in the first case and natural numbers in the second. But this is lost in the symbolic versions, where we relied upon the



context or the reader's experience (or both) to determine that the  $x$  is a real number variable and the  $p, q$  are variables for natural numbers.

Now, in point of fact, we often can (and do) simply rely on context, aided perhaps by the fairly loose conventions that  $x$  and  $y$  usually denote real numbers,  $p, q, m, n$  denote whole numbers, and  $z, w$  denote complex numbers. (But do note that these conventions are *very* loose, and should not be relied upon without some additional indications of the usage.)

Another solution is to modify the quantifier notation so as to specify the kind of objects being quantified. For instance, we could make use of the symbol  $\mathcal{R}$  for the set of real numbers (see Chapter 2) and write

$$(\exists x \in \mathcal{R})$$

to mean

there exists a real number such that ...

(' $x \in \mathcal{R}$ ' means ' $x$  is a member of  $\mathcal{R}$ '. See Chapter 2 for a discussion of basic set theory.)

Thus, to say that the equation  $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$  has a real root we could write

$$(\exists x \in \mathcal{R})(x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0)$$

Again, using the standard notation  $\mathcal{N}$  for the set of natural numbers, we could write

$$(\exists p \in \mathcal{N})(\exists q \in \mathcal{N})[\sqrt{2} = p/q]$$

to say that  $\sqrt{2}$  is rational.

To avoid proliferation of notation, where there is a repetition of a quantifier as here, we could (and often do) abbreviate this to

$$(\exists p, q \in \mathcal{N})(\sqrt{2} = p/q)$$

The back-to-front E that we use for the 'exists' symbol comes from the word 'Exists'.

As well as saying that certain objects exist, we also have frequent need to say that something holds *for all*  $x$ . We use the symbol

$$\forall x$$

to mean

for all  $x$  it is the case that ...

Again, if we wish to specify what sort of  $x$  we are considering, we can modify the notation, writing, for instance,

$$(\forall x \in \mathcal{R})$$

to mean

for all real numbers  $x$  it is the case that ...

and

$$(\forall x \in \mathcal{N})$$

to mean

for all natural numbers  $x$  it is the case that ...

For example, to say that  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational we can write

$$(\forall p \in \mathcal{N})(\forall q \in \mathcal{N})(\sqrt{2} \neq p/q)$$

Notice that the symbol  $\forall$  is just an upside-down A, coming from the word 'All'.

The symbol  $\exists$  is called the *existential quantifier*;  $\forall$  is the *universal quantifier*. Most statements in mathematics involve combinations of both kinds of quantifier. For instance, to make the assertion that there is no largest natural number needs two quantifiers, thus:

$$(\forall m \in \mathcal{N})(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(n > m)$$

This reads: for all natural numbers  $m$  it is the case that there exists a natural number  $n$  such that  $n$  is greater than  $m$ .

Notice that the order in which quantifiers appear can be of paramount importance. For example, if we switch the order in the above we get

$$(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \in \mathcal{N})(n > m)$$

This asserts that there is a natural number which exceeds all natural numbers — an assertion that is clearly false!

### Exercises 1.5

(1) Express the following as existence assertions:

- (a) The equation  $x^3 = 27$  has a natural number solution.
- (b) 1,000,000 is not the largest natural number.

- (c) The natural number  $n$  is not a prime.
- (2) Express the following as 'for all' assertions:
- (a) The equation  $x^3 = 28$  does not have a natural number solution.
  - (b) 0 is less than every natural number.
  - (c) the natural number  $n$  is a prime.
- (3) Express the following in symbolic form using quantifiers for people:
- (a) Everybody loves somebody.
  - (b) Everyone is tall or everyone is short.
  - (c) Everone is tall or short.
  - (d) Nobody is at home.
  - (e) If a man comes, all the women will leave.
- (4) Express the following using quantifiers. (In each case your quantifiers may refer only to the sets  $\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$ .)
- (a) The equation  $x^2 + a = 0$  has a real root for any real number  $a$ .
  - (b) The equation  $x^2 + a = 0$  has a real root for any negative real number  $a$ .
  - (c) Every real number is rational.
  - (d) There is an irrational number.
  - (e) There is no largest irrational number. (This one looks quite complex.)
- (5) Let  $C$  be the set of all cars, let  $D(x)$  mean that  $x$  is domestic, and let  $M(x)$  mean that  $x$  is badly made. Express the following in symbolic form using these symbols:
- (a) All domestic cars are badly made.
  - (b) All foreign cars are badly made.
  - (c) All badly made cars are domestic.
  - (d) There is a domestic car that is not badly made.
  - (e) There is a foreign car that is badly made.
- (6) Express the following sentence using quantifiers for real numbers:
- There is a rational number between any two unequal real numbers.
- (Use only logical connectives and quantifiers, the order relation  $<$ , and the symbol  $Q(x)$  having the meaning ' $x$  is rational'.)

## 1.6 Logic of quantification

In this section we extend the discussion of Section 1.4 to include the case of quantifiers. The extension of propositional logic to include quantifiers is known as *predicate logic*, or sometimes *first-order logic*.

We start by taking up the issue raised already, as to what kind of objects are denoted by the variable in a quantifier.

Associated with any use of quantifiers there is what is known as a *universe*: the collection of all objects that the quantifiers refer to. This may be the collection of all real numbers, the collection of all natural numbers, the collection of all complex numbers, or some other collection. In many cases, the overall context determines the universe. For instance, if we are studying real analysis, then unless otherwise mentioned it may safely be assumed that any quantifier refers to the real numbers. But on occasions there is no alternative but to be quite explicit as to what is the universe under discussion.

A sentence such as

$$x \geq 5$$

that contains an unquantified variable does not make any definite claim. It is neither true nor false, and accordingly is not a proposition. If an appropriate object is substituted for the variable(s), then a proposition will result. For instance, substituting 8 for  $x$  in the above sentence results in the true proposition  $8 \geq 5$ , while substituting  $\pi$  for  $x$  produces the false proposition  $\pi \geq 5$ .

Sentences that contain unquantified variables are called *open sentences*. It is common to indicate the presence of unquantified variables by displaying them, writing, say,  $\phi(x)$  to indicate that the sentence  $\phi$  contains the unquantified variable  $x$ , or  $\psi(x, y)$  to show that  $\psi$  contains the unquantified variables  $x$  and  $y$ .

A *closed sentence* is one that does not contain any unquantified variables. There are two ways to convert an open sentence to a closed sentence: substitute fixed objects for the unquantified variables, or else quantify those unquantified variables.

In mathematics, closed sentences always have a truth value. That is to say, they are propositions. Of course, the truth or falsity of a closed sentence that involves one or more quantifiers depends on the universe involved. The formal definition is as follows.

Let  $U$  denote the universe under consideration (whatever it may be). Let  $\phi(x)$  be a sentence with unquantified variable  $x$ . Given an object  $a$ ,  $\phi(a)$  denotes the result of substituting  $a$  for  $x$  in  $\phi(x)$ .

By the *truth set* of  $\phi$  we mean the set of all those objects  $a$  in  $U$  for which the proposition  $\phi(a)$  is true.

The sentence  $\forall x\phi(x)$  is *true* if and only if the truth set of  $\phi$  is the entire universe  $U$ .

The sentence  $\exists x\phi(x)$  is *true* if and only if the truth set of  $\phi$  is not empty.

As an illustration of these definitions, fix the set of all real numbers,  $\mathcal{R}$ , as the universe, and consider the following quantified sentences.

- $\forall x(x > 3)$  : The truth set of the sentence  $x > 3$  does not contain the number 2 (for instance), and hence is not the entire universe,  $\mathcal{R}$ , so the sentence  $\forall x(x > 3)$  is false.
- $\forall x(x \neq 0)$  : The truth set of the sentence  $x \neq 0$  does not contain the number 0, and hence is not the entire universe, so the sentence  $\forall x(x \neq 0)$  is false. But notice that in this case 0 is the only element of the universe not in the requisite truth set.
- $\forall x(x + 1 > x)$  : The truth set for the sentence  $x + 1 > x$  is the entire set of reals, and so the sentence  $\forall x(x + 1 > x)$  is true.
- $\exists x(x > 3)$  : This sentence is true, since the truth set of the sentence  $x > 3$  is not empty (it contains the number  $\pi$ , for instance).
- $\exists x(x + 1 > x)$  : This sentence is true since the truth set of  $x + 1 > x$  is not empty (being in fact the entire universe).
- $\exists x(x^2 + 1 = 0)$  : This sentence is false, since the truth set is empty. (But notice that if the universe were not  $\mathcal{R}$  but  $\mathcal{C}$ , the set of all complex numbers, then this sentence would be true! It all depends on the universe under consideration.)

As in the case of propositional logic, we define ‘equivalence’ purely in terms of truth values, ignoring what it is the statements actually claim. Thus, two quantified sentences (*that refer to the same universe*) are said to be *equivalent* if they have the same truth sets.

Notice that the equivalence of two sentences can vary depending on the universe concerned. For instance, the sentences

$$\forall x(x > 2) \quad \text{and} \quad \forall x(x \geq 3)$$

are equivalent with respect to the universe  $\mathcal{Z}$  of all integers but not equivalent when the universe is  $\mathcal{R}$ .

At the risk of confusing the reader, it should be noted at this stage that, in practice, mathematicians often omit mention of universal quantification, writing expressions such as

$$x \geq 0 \Rightarrow \sqrt{x} \geq 0$$

when what is meant is

$$(\forall x \in \mathcal{R})[x \geq 0 \Rightarrow \sqrt{x} \geq 0]$$

This is known as *implicit quantification*. Though we do not use this convention in this book, implicit quantification is fairly common, so you should be aware of it.

Care has to be exercised when quantifiers are combined with the propositional connectives  $\wedge$ ,  $\vee$ , etc.

As an illustration of the various pitfalls that can arise, suppose the universe under discussion is the set of natural numbers. Let  $E(x)$  be the open sentence ' $x$  is even' and let  $O(x)$  be the open sentence ' $x$  is odd'.

The sentence

$$\forall x[E(x) \vee O(x)]$$

says that for every natural number  $x$ ,  $x$  is either even or odd (or both). This is clearly true.

On the other hand, the sentence

$$\forall x E(x) \vee \forall x O(x)$$

is false, since it asserts that either all natural numbers are even or else all natural numbers are odd (or both), whereas in fact neither of these alternatives is the case.

Again, the sentence

$$\exists x[E(x) \wedge O(x)]$$

is false, since it claims that there is a natural number that is both even and odd, whereas the sentence

$$\exists x E(x) \wedge \exists x O(x)$$

claims that there is a natural number that is even and there is a natural number that is odd, which is true.

Notice that although the last sentence uses the same variable  $x$  in both parts of the conjunction, the two conjuncts operate separately.

You should make sure you fully appreciate the distinction between *all* the above sentences.

Very often we use quantifiers that are restricted to a smaller collection than the entire universe. For example, in real analysis (where the universe is usually the set  $\mathcal{R}$  of all real numbers) we often need to talk about 'all positive numbers' or 'all negative numbers', and in number theory (where the universe is the set  $\mathcal{N}$  of all natural numbers) we have quantifiers such as 'for all prime numbers' etc.

One way to handle this has already been introduced in the previous section. We can modify the quantifier notation, allowing quantifiers of the form

$$(\forall x \in A) \quad , \quad (\exists x \in A)$$

where  $A$  is some subcollection of the universe. However, these are really just notational abbreviations for a combination of ordinary quantifiers and propositional connectives.

As an illustration, suppose the universe is the set of all animals. Let  $L(x)$  mean that ' $x$  is a leopard' and let  $S(x)$  mean that ' $x$  has spots'. Then the sentence 'all leopards have spots' can be written thus:

$$\forall x[L(x) \Rightarrow S(x)]$$

In English, this reads literally as: 'for all animals  $x$ , if  $x$  is a leopard *then*  $x$  has spots'. This is rather cumbersome English, but the mathematical version turns out to be far more convenient than the alternative of using a modified quantifier of the form  $(\forall x \in \mathcal{L})$  where  $\mathcal{L}$  denotes the set of all leopards.

Beginners often make the mistake of rendering the original sentence 'all leopards have spots' as

$$\forall x[L(x) \wedge S(x)]$$

In English, what this says is: 'for all animals  $x$ ,  $x$  is both a leopard and has spots'. Or, smoothing out the English a bit, 'all animals are leopards and have spots'. This is obviously false. Not all animals are leopards, for one thing.

Part of the reason for the confusion is probably the fact that the mathematics goes differently in the case of existential sentences. For example, consider the sentence 'there is a horse that has spots'. If we let  $H(x)$  mean that ' $x$  is a horse', then this sentence translates into the mathematical sentence

$$\exists x[H(x) \wedge S(x)]$$

Literally: 'there is an animal that is both a horse *and* has spots'.

Contrast this with the sentence

$$\exists x[H(x) \Rightarrow S(x)]$$

This says that ‘there is an animal such that *if* it is a horse, *then* it has spots’. This does not seem to say anything much, and is certainly not at all the same as saying that there is a spotty horse.

In terms of formal logic, the modified quantifier notation

$$(\forall x \in \mathcal{A})\phi(x)$$

is really just an abbreviation for the expression

$$\forall x[A(x) \Rightarrow \phi(x)]$$

where  $A(x)$  is the property of  $x$  being in the collection  $\mathcal{A}$ .

Likewise, the notation

$$(\exists x \in \mathcal{A})\phi(x)$$

is an abbreviation for

$$\exists x[A(x) \wedge \phi(x)]$$

Particularly in real analysis it is important to be able to negate statements involving quantifiers (and end up with the correct answer). Of course, one can negate any statement by simply putting a negation symbol in front. But what we want is a *positive* assertion, not a *negative* one. What is meant by ‘positive’ here should become clear from our examples. Roughly speaking, a ‘positive’ statement is one containing no negation symbol, or else one in which the negation symbols are as far inside the statement as is possible without the resulting expression being unduly cumbersome.

Let  $A(x)$  denote some property of  $x$ . (For example,  $A(x)$  could say that  $x$  is a real root of the equation  $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$ .) Suppose it is not the case that  $\forall x A(x)$  is true. That is, assume

$$\neg[\forall x A(x)]$$

Then, if it is not the case that all  $x$  satisfy  $A(x)$ , what must happen is that at least one of the  $x$  must fail to satisfy  $A(x)$ . In other words, for at least one  $x$ ,  $\neg A(x)$  must be true. In symbols, this can be written as

$$\exists x[\neg A(x)]$$

Hence  $\neg[\forall x A(x)]$  implies  $\exists x[\neg A(x)]$ .

Now suppose

$$\exists x[\neg A(x)]$$

Thus there will be an  $x$  for which  $A(x)$  fails. Hence  $A(x)$  does not hold for every  $x$  (it fails for the  $x$  where it fails!) In other words, it is false that  $A(x)$  holds for all  $x$ . In symbols,

$$\neg[\forall x A(x)]$$



Thus  $\exists x[\neg A(x)]$  implies  $\neg[\forall x A(x)]$ .

Taken together, the two implications just established produce the equivalence

$$\neg[\forall x A(x)] \text{ if and only if } \exists x[\neg A(x)]$$

A similar argument shows that

$$\neg[\exists x A(x)] \text{ if and only if } \forall x[\neg A(x)]$$

(Exercise: Provide this argument.)

Now let us return to that earlier problem about domestic cars. We wish to negate the statement

All domestic cars are badly made

Let us formulate this symbolically using the notation of Exercise 1.5(5). If you got part (a) of this question correct, you should have the formulation

$$(\forall x \in C)[D(x) \Rightarrow M(x)]$$

Negating this gives

$$(\exists x \in C)\neg[D(x) \Rightarrow M(x)]$$

(One common cause of confusion. Why do we not say  $(\exists x \notin C)$ ? The answer is that the ' $\in C$ ' part simply tells us which kind of  $x$  we are to consider. Since our original statement concerns domestic cars, so will its negation.)

Consider now the part

$$\neg[D(x) \Rightarrow M(x)]$$

We have seen already that this is equivalent to

$$D(x) \wedge (\neg M(x))$$

Hence for our negated statement (in positive form now) we get

$$(\exists x \in C)[D(x) \wedge (\neg M(x))]$$

In words, there is a car that is domestic and is not badly made; i.e. there is a domestic car that is not badly made.

We can also obtain this result directly as follows, without going through the above symbolic manipulations.

If it is not the case that all domestic cars are badly made, then it must be the case that at least one of them fails to be badly made. Hence, as this

argument reverses, the required negation is that at least one domestic car is not badly made.

The issue discussed above causes problems for enough beginners to warrant some further examples.

Suppose the universe is  $\mathcal{N}$  and that  $P(x)$  denotes the property ' $x$  is a prime' and  $O(x)$  the property ' $x$  is odd'. Consider the sentence

$$\forall x[P(x) \Rightarrow O(x)]$$

This says that all primes are odd, which is false. Then the negation of this sentence will have the (positive) form

$$\exists x[P(x) \wedge \neg O(x)]$$

Thus the  $\forall$  becomes a  $\exists$  and the  $\Rightarrow$  becomes a  $\wedge$ . In words, the negation reads 'There is a prime that is not odd', or more colloquially, 'there is an even prime'. This is, of course, true.

If we modify the original sentence to read

$$(\forall x > 2)[P(x) \Rightarrow O(x)]$$

(i.e. all primes greater than 2 are odd, which is true) then the negation of this sentence can be written as

$$(\exists x > 2)[P(x) \wedge \neg O(x)]$$

(i.e. there is an even prime bigger than 2) which is false. The thing to notice about this example is that the quantifier  $(\forall x > 2)$  changes to  $(\exists x > 2)$ , *not* to  $(\exists x < 2)$ . Likewise, negation of the quantifier  $(\exists x > 2)$  leads to  $(\forall x > 2)$ , *not* to  $(\forall x < 2)$ . You should make sure you understand the reason for this behavior.

Again, suppose that the universe were the set of all people, and let  $P(x)$  be the property of being a player for a certain sports team and  $H(x)$  the property of being healthy. Then the sentence

$$\exists x[P(x) \wedge \neg H(x)]$$

expresses the claim that there is an unhealthy player. Negating this gives

$$\forall x[\neg P(x) \vee H(x)]$$

This is a bit unnatural to read in English, but by virtue of the way we defined  $\Rightarrow$ , it can be rewritten as

$$\forall x[P(x) \Rightarrow H(x)]$$

and this has the natural reading that 'all players are healthy'.

Finally, let the universe be the set,  $\mathcal{Q}$ , of all rationals, and consider the sentence

$$\forall x[x > 0 \Rightarrow \exists y(xy = 1)]$$

This says that every positive rational has a multiplicative inverse (which is true). The negation of this sentence works out as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}\neg \forall x[x > 0 \Rightarrow \exists y(xy = 1)] & \text{ iff } \exists x[x > 0 \wedge \neg \exists y(xy = 1)] \\ & \text{ iff } \exists x[x > 0 \wedge \forall y(xy \neq 1)]\end{aligned}$$

In words, there is a positive rational with the property that no  $y$  exists such that  $xy = 1$ , i.e. there is a positive rational with no multiplicative inverse.

In order to negate statements with more than one quantifier, the idea is to start at the outside and work inwards, handling each quantifier in turn. The overall effect being that the negation symbol moves inwards, changing each  $\forall$  to an  $\exists$  and each  $\exists$  to a  $\forall$  as it passes. Thus, for example

$$\begin{aligned}\neg [\forall x \exists y \forall z A(x, y, z)] & \text{ iff } \exists x \neg [\exists y \forall z A(x, y, z)] \\ & \text{ iff } \exists x \forall y \neg [\forall z A(x, y, z)] \\ & \text{ iff } \exists x \forall y \exists z \neg [A(x, y, z)]\end{aligned}$$

One further quantifier that is often useful is

'there exists a unique  $x$  such that ...'

The usual notation for this quantifier is

$$\exists!$$

In fact, this quantifier can be defined in terms of the other quantifiers, by taking

$$\exists! x \phi(x)$$

to be an abbreviation for

$$\exists x \phi(x) \wedge \forall y [\phi(y) \Rightarrow x = y]$$

### Exercises 1.6

- (1) Translate the following sentences into symbolic form using quantifiers. In each case the universe is given in parentheses.

- (a) All students like pizza. (All people)
- (b) One of my friends does not have a car. (All people)

- (c) Some elephants do not like muffins. (All animals)
  - (d) Every triangle is isosceles. (All geometric figures)
  - (e) Some of the students in the class are not here today. (All people)
  - (f) Everyone loves somebody. (All people)
  - (g) If a man comes, all the women will leave. (All people)
  - (h) All people are tall or short. (All people)
  - (i) All people are tall or all people are short. (All people)
  - (j) Not all precious stones are beautiful. (All stones)
  - (k) Nobody loves me. (All people)
  - (l) At least one British snake is poisonous. (All snakes)
  - (m) At least one British snake is poisonous. (All animals)
- (2) Which of the following are true? The universe for each is given in parentheses.
- (a)  $\forall x(x + 1 \geq x)$  (Real numbers)
  - (b)  $\exists x(2x + 3 = 5x + 1)$  (Natural numbers)
  - (c)  $\exists x(x^2 + 1 = 2^x)$  (Real numbers)
  - (d)  $\exists x(x^2 = 2)$  (Rational numbers)
  - (e)  $\exists x(x^2 = 2)$  (Real numbers)
  - (f)  $\forall x(x^3 + 17x^2 + 6x + 100 \geq 0)$  (Real numbers)
  - (g)  $\exists x(x^3 + x^2 + x + 1 \geq 0)$  (Real numbers)
  - (h)  $\forall x\exists y(x + y = 0)$  (Real numbers)
  - (i)  $\exists x\forall y(x + y = 0)$  (Real numbers)
  - (j)  $\forall x\exists!y(y = x^2)$  (Real numbers)
  - (k)  $\forall x\exists!y(y = x^2)$  (Natural numbers)
  - (l)  $\forall x\exists y\forall z(xy = xz)$  (Real numbers)
  - (m)  $\forall x\exists y\forall z(xy = xz)$  (Prime numbers)
  - (n)  $\forall x\exists y(x \geq 0 \Rightarrow y^2 = x)$  (Real numbers)
  - (o)  $\forall x[x < 0 \Rightarrow \exists y(y^2 = x)]$  (Real numbers)
  - (p)  $\forall x[x < 0 \Rightarrow \exists y(y^2 = x)]$  (Positive real numbers)
- (3) Negate each of the mathematical sentences you wrote in question (1), putting your answers in positive form. Express each negation in natural, idiomatic English.

- (4) Negate each of the sentences in question (2), putting your answers in positive form.
- (5) Negate the following statements and put each answer into positive form:
- (a)  $(\forall x \in \mathcal{N})(\exists y \in \mathcal{N})(x + y = 1)$
  - (b)  $(\forall x > 0)(\exists y < 0)(x + y = 0)$  (where  $x, y$  are real number variables)
  - (c)  $\exists x(\forall \epsilon > 0)(-\epsilon < x < \epsilon)$  (where  $x, y$  are real number variables)
  - (d)  $(\forall x \in \mathcal{N})(\forall y \in \mathcal{N})(\exists z \in \mathcal{N})(x + y = z^2)$
- (6) The standard definition of a real function  $f$  being *continuous at a point*  $x = a$  is

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists \delta > 0)(\forall x)[|x - a| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(x) - f(a)| < \epsilon]$$

Write down the formal definition for  $f$  being *discontinuous at*  $a$ .

- (7) Two open sentences  $\phi(x)$  and  $\psi(x)$  involving the variable  $x$  are said to be *equivalent* (relative to some given universe) if they have the same truth set (for that universe).
- (a) Show that the open sentences  $x^2 = 4$  and  $x = 2$  are equivalent for the universe  $\mathcal{N}$  but not equivalent if the universe is  $\mathcal{Z}$ .
  - (b) Show that (for a fixed universe  $U$ ) the closed sentences  $\forall x\phi(x)$  and  $\forall x\psi(x)$  are equivalent (i.e. have the same truth value) if and only if the open sentences  $\phi(x)$  and  $\psi(x)$  are equivalent (i.e. have the same truth set).
- (8) Give a negation (in positive form) of the sentence: ‘You can fool some of the people all of the time and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time’.

## 1.7 Proofs in mathematics

A *proof* of a statement in mathematics is a logically sound argument that establishes the truth of the statement. There are many types of proof. Our purpose here is just to mention a few of these and see how they relate to our discussion of language.

Suppose first we wish to establish the truth of a conditional

$$\phi \Rightarrow \psi$$

Well, since (by our definition) this will certainly be true whenever  $\phi$  is false, we need only consider the case when  $\phi$  is true. That is, we can *assume*  $\phi$ . For the conditional to be valid now,  $\psi$  must also be true. Thus, using our assumption that  $\phi$  is true we must now present an argument that demonstrates the truth of  $\psi$ . This, of course, accords with our everyday understanding of ‘implication’. Thus, when it comes to *proving* conditionals, the problems concerning the distinction between the conditional and real implication that we encountered in Section 1.2 do not arise.

For example, suppose we are given a pair  $x, y$  of real numbers. We do not know just which numbers they are, but nevertheless we want to prove the statement

$$(x \text{ and } y \text{ are rational numbers}) \Rightarrow (x + y \text{ is a rational number})$$

We start by *assuming*  $x$  and  $y$  are rational numbers. Then we can find integers  $p, q, m, n$  such that  $x = p/m, y = q/n$ . Then

$$x + y = \frac{p}{m} + \frac{q}{n} = \frac{pn + qm}{mn}$$

Hence, as  $pn + qm$  and  $mn$  are integers, we conclude that  $x + y$  is rational. The statement is proved.

Conditionals involving quantifiers are often best handled by using the equivalence of  $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$  with the contrapositive  $(\neg\psi) \Rightarrow (\neg\phi)$ .

Suppose, for instance, that for some given, unknown angle  $\theta$  we wish to prove the conditional

$$(\sin \theta \neq 0) \Rightarrow (\forall n \in \mathcal{N})(\theta \neq n\pi)$$

This statement is equivalent to

$$\neg(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})(\theta \neq n\pi) \Rightarrow \neg(\sin \theta \neq 0)$$

which reduces to the positive form

$$(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\theta = n\pi) \Rightarrow (\sin \theta = 0)$$

This is an implication we know to be correct. This proves the original implication by virtue of what equivalence means. For in order to prove a statement it is enough to prove any equivalent statement. In the above case the proof was an example of what is sometimes referred to as *proof by contrapositive*.

Another common method of proof is the so-called method of *proof by contradiction* (*reductio ad absurdum*). This is related to the method of proof

by contrapositive mentioned above. We wish to prove some statement  $\phi$  but cannot see how to begin. So we *assume*  $\neg\phi$  and proceed to deduce some obviously false statement (e.g.  $0 = 1$ ). Since our conclusion is false it follows (assuming our reasoning is sound) that our initial assumption of  $\neg\phi$  has to be false. Hence  $\phi$  is shown to be true.

This relates to the method of proof by contrapositive as follows. Let  $F$  denote any false statement,  $T$  any true statement. We *assume*  $\neg\phi$  and *deduce*  $F$ . So we *prove* the conditional

$$(\neg\phi) \Rightarrow F$$

But this is logically equivalent to the contrapositive

$$(\neg F) \Rightarrow (\neg(\neg\phi))$$

i.e. to

$$T \Rightarrow \phi$$

Hence our proof also establishes the conditional  $T \Rightarrow \phi$ . But  $T$  is true, so the truth of the conditional means that  $\phi$  is true, as required.

An excellent illustration of the method of proof by contradiction is furnished by the following result, promised earlier.

**Theorem 1.7.1**  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational.

*Proof:* Assume, on the contrary, that  $\sqrt{2}$  were rational. Then we could find natural numbers  $p$  and  $q$  such that

$$\sqrt{2} = p/q$$

where  $p$  and  $q$  have no common factors. Squaring gives

$$2 = p^2/q^2$$

which rearranges to give

$$p^2 = 2q^2$$

Thus  $p^2$  is even. Hence  $p$  must be even, since  $\text{odd}^2 = \text{odd}$ . Thus there is a natural number  $r$  such that  $p = 2r$ . Substituting for  $p$  in the last equation gives

$$4r^2 = 2q^2$$

and cancelling 2 gives

$$2r^2 = q^2$$

Thus  $q^2$  is even. Hence  $q$  must be even. But  $p$  is even and  $p$  and  $q$  have no common factors, so we have a contradiction. Hence our original assumption that  $\sqrt{2}$  was rational must be false. In other words,  $\sqrt{2}$  must be irrational, which is what we set out to prove.  $\square$

Proving existence assertions is often straightforward. In order to prove the statement

$$\exists x A(x)$$

it is enough to find one particular  $x$  that satisfies  $A(x)$ . For instance, if we wish to prove that

there exists an irrational number

it suffices to quote the above theorem. Not only does this tell us that an irrational number exists, it provides us with a specific example.

However, it is not always the case that an existence proof identifies a particular object that makes the existence assertion true. There are many instances in mathematics where one knows that, say, a real number exists that satisfies a certain property, but one has no idea what such an  $x$  looks like, or even whether it is positive or negative. Indeed, advanced mathematics abounds with examples. We content ourselves here with one fairly simple example.

**Theorem 1.7.2** There are irrational numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational.

*Proof:* By Theorem 1.7.1, we know that  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational. Consider the number  $r = \sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ . If  $r$  is rational, then we can take  $a = b = \sqrt{2}$  to establish the theorem. If, on the other hand,  $r$  is irrational, then  $a = r$  and  $b = \sqrt{2}$  satisfy the theorem, since

$$a^b = (\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}})^{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}^2 = 2$$

$\square$

The thing to notice about the above proof is that it does not tell us which particular pair  $a, b$  of numbers satisfies the requirements of the theorem.<sup>3</sup>

Of course, in the above proof we do know that the actual pair is one of two possible pairs. Many examples that occur naturally in more advanced parts of mathematics do not even provide a finite range of possibilities for

---

<sup>3</sup>In fact a considerably more sophisticated proof shows that the number  $r$  is indeed irrational, so the second of the two pairs considered is the one that works. But the proof given here does not establish this fact.



a solution: they simply yield the conclusion that there is such-and-such an object. Such proofs are often referred to as *non-constructive proofs*. Quite often they involve proof by contradiction.

Finally, we look at how to prove a statement of the form

$$\forall x A(x)$$

One possibility is to take an 'arbitrary'  $x$  and show that it must satisfy  $A(x)$ . For instance, suppose we wish to prove the assertion

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})(\exists m \in \mathcal{N})(m > n^2)$$

We can do this as follows.

Let  $n$  be an arbitrary natural number. Then  $n^2$  is a natural number. Hence  $m = n^2 + 1$  is a natural number. Since  $m > n^2$ , this shows that

$$(\exists m \in \mathcal{N})(m > n^2)$$

This is a proof because our original  $n$  was quite *arbitrary*. We said nothing at all about  $n$ : it could be any natural number. Hence the argument is valid for *all*  $n$  in  $\mathcal{N}$ . This is not the same as picking a *particular*  $n$ . If we had randomly chosen, say,  $n = 37$ , the proof would not have been valid — even though we had chosen this  $n$  quite at random. For instance, suppose we wanted to prove

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})(n^2 = 81)$$

By picking at random a particular  $n$  we might be unlucky enough to pick  $n = 9$ . But this does not prove the statement of course, because our choice was an arbitrary choice (albeit an unlucky one) of a *particular*  $n$ , and not a 'choice' of an *arbitrary*  $n$ .

In practice what this amounts to is that whenever we start a proof by saying 'let  $n$  be arbitrary', we use the symbol  $n$  throughout the proof, and assume also that the 'value' of  $n$  remains constant throughout, but we make absolutely no restriction on what the value of  $n$  is.

There are other possibilities for proving universally quantified statements. In particular, statements of the form

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$$

where the quantification is over all natural numbers, are often proved by a method known as *induction*.

The idea here is to prove the following two statements:

- (1)  $A(1)$  (Initial step)

(2)  $(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})[A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)]$  (Induction step)

That this implies  $(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$  may be reasoned as follows. By (1),  $A(1)$ . By (2) (as a special case) we have  $A(1) \Rightarrow A(2)$ . Hence  $A(2)$ . Again, a special case of (2) is  $A(2) \Rightarrow A(3)$ . Hence  $A(3)$ . And so on right through the natural numbers.

The thing to notice about this is that neither of the two statements we actually prove is the statement we are trying to establish. What we prove are the initial case (1) and the conditional (2). The step from these two to the conclusion  $(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$  (which we just explained) is known as the *principle of mathematical induction*.

As an example let us use the method of induction to prove a simple theorem.

**Theorem 1.7.3** If  $x > 0$  then for any  $n \in \mathcal{N}$ ,

$$(1+x)^{n+1} > 1 + (n+1)x$$

*Proof:* Let  $A(n)$  be the statement

$$(1+x)^{n+1} > 1 + (n+1)x$$

$A(1)$  is the statement

$$(1+x)^2 > 1 + 2x$$

which is true by virtue of the binomial expansion

$$(1+x)^2 = 1 + 2x + x^2$$

together with the fact that  $x > 0$ .

The next step is to prove the statement

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})[A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)]$$

To do this we take an arbitrary (!)  $n$  in  $\mathcal{N}$  and prove the conditional

$$A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)$$

To do this we assume  $A(n)$  and try to deduce  $A(n+1)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} (1+x)^{n+2} &= (1+x)^{n+1}(1+x) \\ &> (1+(n+1)x)(1+x) \quad [\text{by } A(n)] \\ &= 1 + (n+1)x + x + (n+1)x^2 \\ &= 1 + (n+2)x + (n+1)x^2 \\ &> 1 + (n+2)x \quad [\text{since } x > 0] \end{aligned}$$

This proves  $A(n+1)$ .

Hence by induction (that is to say, by the principle of mathematical induction) the theorem is proved.  $\square$

The following summarizes the method of proof by induction. You wish to prove that some statement  $A(n)$  is valid for all natural numbers  $n$ . First you establish  $A(1)$ . This is usually just a matter of trivial observation. You then present an algebraic argument which establishes the conditional

$$A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)$$

for any  $n$ . In general, you do this as follows. Assume  $A(n)$ . Look at the statement of  $A(n+1)$ , and somehow try to reduce it to  $A(n)$ , which has been assumed true, and thereby deduce the truth of  $A(n+1)$ . This accomplished, the induction proof is complete, by virtue of the principle of mathematical induction.

In setting out an induction proof formally, three points should be remembered:

- (1) State clearly that the method of induction is being used.
- (2) Prove the case  $n = 1$  (or at the very least make the explicit observation that this case is obviously true, if this is the case).
- (3) (The hard part.) Prove the conditional

$$A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)$$

One variant of induction that sometimes arises concerns the proof of statements such as

$$(\forall n \geq n_0)A(n)$$

where  $n_0$  is some given natural number. In such a case, the first step of the induction proof consists not of a verification of  $A(1)$  (which may not be true) but of  $A(n_0)$  (the first case). The second step of the proof consists of the proof of the statement

$$(\forall n \geq n_0)[A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)]$$

This is what happens in the following theorem, *the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic*.

**Theorem 1.7.4** Every natural number greater than 1 is either a prime or a product of primes.

*Proof:* At first you might think that the statement to be proved by induction is

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$$

where

$A(n)$  :  $n$  is either a prime or a product of primes

However, as will shortly become clear, it is more convenient to replace  $A(n)$  by the (stronger) statement

$B(n)$  : every natural number  $m$  such that  $1 < m \leq n$  is either a prime or a product of primes

So here goes. And from now on we shall set out our proof in a ‘correct’ fashion.

We prove, by induction, that  $B(n)$  is true for all natural numbers  $n > 1$ . This clearly proves the theorem.

For  $n = 2$ , the result is trivial:  $B(2)$  holds because 2 is prime. (Notice that in this case we must start at  $n = 2$  rather than the more common  $n = 1$ .)

Now assume  $B(n)$ . We deduce  $B(n + 1)$ . Let  $m$  be a natural number such that  $1 < m \leq n + 1$ . If  $m \leq n$ , then by  $B(n)$ ,  $m$  is either a prime or a product of primes. So in order to prove  $B(n + 1)$  we need only show that  $n + 1$  itself is either a prime or a product of primes. If  $n + 1$  is a prime there is nothing further to say. Otherwise,  $n$  is composite, which means there are natural numbers  $p, q$ , such that

$$1 < p, q < n + 1$$

and

$$n + 1 = pq$$

Now  $p, q \leq n$  so by  $B(n)$ , each of  $p$  and  $q$  is either a prime or a product of primes. But then  $n + 1 = pq$  is a product of primes. This completes the proof of  $B(n + 1)$ .

The theorem now follows by induction. More precisely, the principle of mathematical induction yields the validity of the statement

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})B(n)$$

which trivially implies the theorem.  $\square$

Of course, in the above example, the conditional

$$B(n) \Rightarrow B(n + 1)$$

was rather easy to establish. (Indeed, we used  $B(n)$  rather than the more 'obvious'  $A(n)$  mentioned earlier, precisely in order to carry through this simple argument.) In many cases, real ingenuity is required. But do not be misled into confusing the proof by induction of the main result

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$$

with the technical subproof of the induction step

$$(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})[A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)]$$

Without an announcement of the fact that induction is being used, and an observation or proof that  $A(1)$  is valid, no amount of technical cleverness at proving the conditional  $[A(n) \Rightarrow A(n+1)]$  will amount to a proof of the statement  $(\forall n \in \mathcal{N})A(n)$ .

So much for induction. One last remark concerning proofs of statements of the form

$$\forall x A(x)$$

If all else fails, there is the method of contradiction. By assuming  $\neg \forall x A(x)$  we obtain an  $x$  such that  $\neg A(x)$  (because  $\neg \forall x A(x)$  is equivalent to  $\exists x \neg A(x)$ ). Now we have a place to start. The difficulty is finding the finish (i.e. the contradiction).

### Exercises 1.7

- (1) Say whether each of the following is true or false, and support your decision by a *proof*:
  - (a) There exist real numbers  $x$  and  $y$  such that  $x + y = y$ .
  - (b) For all positive integers  $n$ ,  $n^2 + n + 41$  is a prime.
  - (c)  $\forall x \exists y (x + y = 0)$  (where  $x, y$  are real number variables).
  - (d)  $(\exists m \in \mathcal{N})(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(3m + 5n = 12)$ .
  - (e) For all integers  $a, b, c$ , if  $a$  divides  $bc$  (without remainder), then either  $a$  divides  $b$  or  $a$  divides  $c$ .
  - (f) The sum of any five consecutive integers is divisible by 5 (without remainder).
  - (g) For any integer  $n$ , the number  $n^2 + n + 1$  is odd.
  - (h) Between any two distinct rational numbers there is a third rational number.

- (i) For any real numbers  $x, y$ , if  $x$  is rational and  $y$  is irrational, then  $x + y$  is irrational.
  - (j) For any real numbers  $x, y$ , if  $x + y$  is irrational, then at least one of  $x, y$  is irrational.
  - (k) For any real numbers  $x, y$ , if  $x + y$  is rational, then at least one of  $x, y$  is rational.
- (2) Prove that  $\sqrt{3}$  is irrational.
- (3) Prove that if  $p$  is a prime number then  $\sqrt{p}$  is irrational.
- (4) Prove that  $\sqrt{n}$  is irrational iff  $n$  is not a perfect square.
- (5) Let  $m$  and  $n$  be integers. Prove that:
- (a) If  $m$  and  $n$  are even, then  $m + n$  is even.
  - (b) If  $m$  and  $n$  are even, then  $mn$  is divisible by 4.
  - (c) If  $m$  and  $n$  are odd, then  $m + n$  is even.
  - (d) If one of  $m, n$  is even and the other is odd, then  $m + n$  is odd.
  - (e) If one of  $m, n$  is even and the other is odd, then  $mn$  is even.
- (6) Prove that if every even natural number greater than 2 is a sum of two primes, then every odd natural number greater than 5 is a sum of three primes. [The assumption here is known as the *Goldbach Conjecture*, and is a famous unsolved problem of long standing. Computer searches have verified the conjecture for all even numbers up to a billion.]
- (7) The notation

$$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i$$

is a common abbreviation for the sum

$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots + a_n$$

For instance,

$$\sum_{r=1}^n r^2$$

denotes the sum

$$1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2$$

Prove the following by induction:

$$(a) \forall n \in \mathcal{N} : \sum_{r=1}^n r = \frac{1}{2}n(n+1)$$

$$(b) \forall n \in \mathcal{N} : \sum_{r=1}^n r^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$$

$$(c) \forall n \in \mathcal{N} : \sum_{r=1}^n 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 2$$

$$(d) \forall n \in \mathcal{N} : \sum_{r=1}^n r.r! = (n+1)! - 1$$

(8) Prove the following by induction:

(a)  $4^n - 1$  is divisible by 3.

(b) The sum of the first  $n$  odd numbers is equal to  $n^2$

(c)  $(n+1)! > 2^{n+3}$  for all  $n \geq 5$ .

(d) If a set  $A$  has  $n$  elements, then the power set  $\mathcal{P}(A)$  has  $2^n$  elements. (See Chapter 2 for details of set theory.)

## 1.8 Absolute values

The *absolute value* of a real number  $x$  is defined by:

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

In geometric terms,  $|x|$  is the distance of the point  $x$  from the origin (on the real line). For later use, we prove some simple results about this concept.

**Theorem 1.8.1** For any  $a$ ,

$$|a| = \sqrt{a^2}$$

*Proof:* Clearly,  $|a|^2 = a^2$ . Taking positive square roots,  $\sqrt{|a|^2} = \sqrt{a^2}$ . But  $|a| \geq 0$ . Hence  $\sqrt{|a|^2} = |a|$  and the theorem is proved.  $\square$

**Theorem 1.8.2** For any  $a, b$ ,

$$|ab| = |a||b|$$

*Proof:* There are four possible cases:

- (1)  $a \geq 0, b \geq 0$ . Then  $|ab| = ab = |a||b|$ .  
 (2)  $a \geq 0, b < 0$ . Then  $|ab| = -(ab) = a(-b) = |a||b|$ .  
 (3)  $a < 0, b \geq 0$ . Then  $|ab| = -(ab) = (-a)b = |a||b|$ .  
 (4)  $a < 0, b < 0$ . Then  $|ab| = ab = (-a)(-b) = |a||b|$ .

□

**Theorem 1.8.3** Let  $a > 0$ . Then for any  $x$ ,

$$|x| \leq a \text{ iff } -a \leq x \leq a$$

*Proof:* Exercise for the reader. □

**Theorem 1.8.4 (Triangle inequality)** For any  $a, b$ ,

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$$

*Proof:* Clearly, by Theorem 1.8.2,

$$ab \leq |ab| = |a||b|$$

Thus

$$2ab \leq 2|a||b|$$

So

$$a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \leq a^2 + 2|a||b| + b^2$$

So by Theorem 1.8.1,

$$(a + b)^2 \leq |a|^2 + 2|a||b| + |b|^2$$

i.e.

$$(a + b)^2 \leq (|a| + |b|)^2$$

Hence

$$\sqrt{(a + b)^2} \leq \sqrt{(|a| + |b|)^2}$$

So, by Theorem 1.8.1,

$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$$

and the proof is complete. □

If  $x, y \in \mathcal{R}$ , the positive number  $|x - y|$  represents the distance between  $x$  and  $y$  on the real line. If  $x \neq y$ , then  $|x - y| > 0$ . Conversely, if  $|x - y| > 0$ , then  $x \neq y$ . Hence  $x = y$  iff  $|x - y| = 0$ . By the triangle inequality, if  $x, y, z \in \mathcal{R}$ , we have

$$|x - y| \leq |x - z| + |z - y|$$

This inequality is also referred to as ‘the triangle inequality’.



## 1.9 The integers

The integers provide a convenient domain to illustrate some of the techniques used in order to prove theorems in mathematics.

Given any two integers you can add them, subtract one from the other, or multiply them together, and the result will always be another integer. Division is not so straightforward. For some pairs of integers, say 5 and 15, division is possible (at least one way round: 15 divides by 5 to give the integer result 3). For other pairs, say 7 and 15, division is not possible unless you are prepared to allow fractional results. Purely in terms of integers, without making any recourse to non-integer rationals, what can be said is that the process of division leads to two numbers, a *quotient* and a *remainder*.

For example, if you divide 9 by 4 you get a *quotient* of 2 and a *remainder* of 1:

$$9 = 4 \cdot 2 + 1$$

This is a special case of our first formal theorem concerning integers.

**Theorem 1.9.1 (The Division Theorem)** Let  $a, b$  be integers,  $b > 0$ . Then there are unique integers  $q, r$  such that  $a = q \cdot b + r$  and  $0 \leq r < b$ .

*Proof:* There are two things to be proved: that  $q, r$  exist with the stated properties and that such  $q, r$  are unique. We prove existence first.

The idea is to look at all non-negative integers of the form  $a - kb$ , where  $k$  is an integer, and show that one of them is less than  $b$ . (Any value of  $k$  for which this occurs will be a suitable  $q$ , the value  $r$  then being given by  $r = a - kb$ .)

Are there any such integers  $a - kb \geq 0$ ? Yes, there are. Take  $k = -|a|$ . Then, since  $b \geq 1$ ,

$$a - kb = a + |a| \cdot b \geq a + |a| \geq 0$$

Since such integers  $a - kb \geq 0$  do exist, there will be a smallest one, of course. Call it  $r$ , and let  $q$  be the value of  $k$  for which it occurs, so that  $r = a - qb$ . To complete the (existence) proof, we show that  $r < b$ .

Suppose, on the contrary, that  $r \geq b$ . Then

$$a - (q + 1)b = a - qb - b = r - b \geq 0$$

Thus  $a - (q + 1)b$  is a non-negative integer of the form  $a - kb$ . But  $r$  was chosen as the smallest one, and yet  $a - (q + 1)b < a - qb = r$ , so this situation is contradictory. Thus it must be the case that  $r < b$ , as we wished to prove.

That leaves us with the proof of uniqueness of  $q, r$ . The idea is to show that if there are representations

$$a = qb + r = q'b + r'$$

of  $a$  with  $0 \leq r, r' < b$ , then in fact  $r = r'$  and  $q = q'$ .

We start by rearranging the above equation as

$$(1) \quad r' - r = b \cdot (q - q')$$

Taking absolute values:

$$(2) \quad |r' - r| = b \cdot |q - q'|$$

But

$$-b < -r \leq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq r' < b$$

which together imply that

$$-b < r' - r < b$$

or in other words

$$|r' - r| < b$$

Hence by (2),

$$b \cdot |q - q'| < b$$

This implies that

$$|q - q'| < 1$$

There is only one possibility now, namely that  $q - q' = 0$ , i.e.  $q = q'$ . It follows at once using (1) that  $r = r'$ . The proof is complete.  $\square$

The above theorem applies only to the division of an integer  $a$  by a *positive* integer  $b$ . More general is:

**Theorem 1.9.2** Let  $a, b$  be integers,  $b \neq 0$ . Then there are unique integers  $q, r$  such that

$$a = q \cdot b + r \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq r < |b|$$

*Proof:* The case where  $b > 0$  has been dealt with in Theorem 1.9.1, so assume now that  $b < 0$ . Since  $|b| > 0$ , applying Theorem 1.9.1 provides unique integers  $q', r'$  such that

$$a = q' \cdot |b| + r' \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq r' < |b|$$

Set  $q = -q', r = r'$ . Then, since  $|b| = -b$ , we get

$$a = q \cdot b + r \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq r < |b|$$

as required.  $\square$

Theorem 1.9.2 is also sometimes referred to as the Division Theorem. In each case, the number  $q$  is referred to as the *quotient* of  $a$  by  $b$  and  $r$  is called the *remainder*.

Simple though it is, the Division Theorem yields many results that can be of assistance in computational work. For instance (and this is a very simple example), if you were faced with a search for numbers which are squares of primes, it might be helpful to know that the square of any odd number is one more than a multiple of 8. (For example,  $3^2 = 9 = 8 + 1$ ,  $5^2 = 25 = 3 \cdot 8 + 1$ .) To verify this fact, note that by the Division Theorem, any number can be expressed in one of the forms  $4q$ ,  $4q + 1$ ,  $4q + 2$ ,  $4q + 3$ , so any odd number has one of the forms  $4q + 1$ ,  $4q + 3$ . Squaring each of these gives

$$\begin{aligned}(4q + 1)^2 &= 16q^2 + 8q + 1 = 8(2q^2 + 1) + 1 \\ (4q + 3)^2 &= 16q^2 + 24q + 9 = 8(2q^2 + 3q + 1) + 1\end{aligned}$$

In both cases the result is one more than a multiple of 8.

In case division of  $a$  by  $b$  produces a remainder  $r = 0$ , we say that  $a$  is *divisible* by  $b$ . That is to say, an integer  $a$  is said to be *divisible* by another integer  $b$  if and only if there is an integer  $q$  such that  $a = b \cdot q$ . For example, 45 is divisible by 9 whereas 44 is not divisible by 9.

The theorem that follows lists the basic properties of divisibility. In stating this result we make use of the (standard) notation  $b|a$  to mean that  $a$  is divisible by  $b$ .

**Theorem 1.9.3** Let  $a, b, c, d$  be integers,  $a \neq 0$ . Then:

- (i)  $a|0$ ,  $a|a$  ;
- (ii)  $a|1$  if and only if  $a = \pm 1$  ;
- (iii) if  $a|b$  and  $c|d$ , then  $ac|bd$  (for  $c \neq 0$ ) ;
- (iv) if  $a|b$  and  $b|c$ , then  $a|c$  (for  $b \neq 0$ ) ;
- (v)  $[a|b$  and  $b|a]$  if and only if  $a = \pm b$  ;
- (vi) if  $a|b$  and  $b \neq 0$ , then  $|a| \leq |b|$  ;
- (vii) if  $a|b$  and  $a|c$ , then  $a|(bx + cy)$  for any integers  $x, y$ .

*Proof:* In each case the proof is simply a matter of going back to the definition of  $a|b$ . For instance, to prove (iv), the assumptions mean that there are integers  $d$  and  $e$  such that  $b = da$  and  $c = eb$ , and it follows at once that  $c = (de)a$ , so  $a|c$ . To take another case, consider (vi). Since  $a|b$

there is an integer  $d$  such that  $b = da$ . Thus  $|b| = |d| \cdot |a|$ . Since  $b \neq 0$ , we must have  $d \neq 0$  here, so  $|d| \geq 1$ . Thus  $|a| \leq |b|$ , as required. The remaining cases are left as an exercise.  $\square$

The formal definition of a *prime* number is an integer  $p > 1$  which is only divisible by 1 and  $p$ .

### Exercises 1.9

- (1) Prove all the parts of Theorem 1.9.3.
- (2) Prove that every odd number is of one of the forms  $4n + 1$  or  $4n + 3$ .
- (3) Prove that for any integer  $n$ , at least one of the integers  $n$ ,  $n+2$ ,  $n+4$  is divisible by 3.
- (4) A classic unsolved problem in number theory asks if there are infinitely many pairs of 'twin primes', pairs of primes separated by 2, such as 3 and 5, 11 and 13, or 71 and 73. Prove that the only prime triple (i.e. three primes, each 2 from the next) is 3, 5, 7.
- (5) It is a standard result about primes that if  $p$  is prime, then whenever  $p$  divides a product  $ab$ ,  $p$  divides at least one of  $a, b$ . Prove the converse, that any natural number having this property (for any pair  $a, b$ ) must be prime.
- (6) Prove that if  $a$  is an odd integer, then  $24|a(a^2 - 1)$ . [Hint: Look at the example that followed Theorem 1.9.2.]
- (7) Prove the following version of the Division Theorem. Given integers  $a, b$  with  $b \neq 0$ , there are unique integers  $q$  and  $r$  such that

$$a = qb + r \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{1}{2}|b| < r \leq \frac{1}{2}|b|$$

[Hint: Write  $a = q'b + r'$  where  $0 \leq r' < |b|$ . If  $0 \leq r' \leq \frac{1}{2}|b|$ , let  $r = r', q = q'$ . If  $\frac{1}{2}|b| < r' < |b|$ , let  $r = r' - |b|$ , and set  $q = q' + 1$  if  $b > 0$  and  $q = q' - 1$  if  $b < 0$ .]

## 1.10 Mathematical truth

The notion of 'truth' is one which has occupied philosophers for generations, and no doubt will continue to do so, and it is not our present intention to enter into this rather bewildering area. However, we should say something

about what a mathematician means by the assertion that some mathematical statement is *true* (or *false*). This requires a little knowledge of the development of mathematics.

All mathematical concepts have their origin in the everyday world around us. For example, the natural numbers arise from our desire (or need) to count collections of objects, the rational numbers are required in order to measure lengths, geometry and trigonometry assist us in navigation, and so on. At the initial stage, 'true' means 'experimentally verifiable'.

Thus we can demonstrate the 'truth' of the assertion

$$1 + 2 = 3$$

by taking one apple and two oranges and noting that there are three items altogether. But what about the assertion

$$1\,000\,000\,000 + 5 = 1\,000\,000\,005$$

Most of us would (I hope) agree that this statement is just as 'true' as the previous one, though it is clearly out of the question to verify this fact by counting. So why do we so readily agree that the equation is valid?

Well, although the concepts of natural number and addition arise out of everyday experience, they are really just idealized, abstract concepts — figments of our imagination — whose properties and behaviour are *postulated* (by us) to correspond to natural phenomena. (For instance, none of us has ever seen 'the number 10'. We may have seen ten apples in a bowl. And we have just seen two symbols on a page which we read as 'ten'. But 'the number 10' itself remains locked away somewhere in our psyche.) The equation

$$1\,000\,000\,000 + 5 = 1\,000\,000\,005$$

is 'true' because it is a consequence of the properties we postulate for the natural numbers.

Of course, addition of natural numbers is so very basic and familiar to us, that it is rare to regard matters in quite this fashion ('rare', notice, not 'incorrect'). But what about (say) complex numbers? The equation

$$(1 + i)^2 = 2i$$

is 'true', but we cannot test this by experiment — even a hypothetical experiment! In fact it is 'true' only in the sense that it can be proved to be a consequence of the properties we postulate the complex numbers to have.

This brings us to the real nature of pure mathematics. In each area, be it the theory of addition of integers, the theory of real numbers, geometry, calculus, or whatever, we begin with a collection of *postulates* (or *axioms*)

that set down the properties the objects under consideration are to have. These postulates are formulated either by observation of some everyday event (as with the postulates for addition of integers or for classical Euclidean geometry), or else by consideration of what properties the system 'ought' to have. From then on 'true' means simply 'provable from the postulates'. (There are also axioms for logical deduction, so the notion of just what constitutes a 'proof' is also determined by means of postulates, but at this stage you are probably best advised to stick with whatever intuitive notions you have already regarding the nature of proof.)

In the case of the natural numbers or the rational numbers, the basic postulates are often never cited at first-year college level, so you may have some difficulty in appreciating the above remarks. But it is extremely likely that any course you take in real analysis will commence with some discussion of the postulates for the real numbers, and then you will see how 'true' corresponds to 'provable from the axioms'. (We discuss the real numbers briefly in Chapter 4.)

My only concern now is that when you are next asked to prove something, you will be puzzled as to where you should start. Especially as you don't know 'all the axioms'. Don't worry! (In fact, you probably will, but what more can I say?) Except in unusual circumstances, a 'proof' of something is simply a logical argument *that convinces us that the fact is true* (for the system concerned). The 'proof' given earlier that  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational is valid in this sense. Admittedly this 'proof' used various properties of the natural numbers (such as the square of an odd number being odd) that are only 'true' because they follow from the postulates for the integers. But we all 'know' that  $\text{odd}^2 = \text{odd}$ , so in this case there is no need to go right back to the axioms to check it. As a general rule: let common sense be the judge of what is or is not a proof. After a little while you should have no difficulties in deciding what you may or may not assume in any given instance. (Though even the experts can disagree on this matter — and often do! Try to arrange a discussion between a mathematician and an engineer as to where a calculus course should begin: by introducing the postulates for the real number system and deducing everything from them, or by assuming the students 'know' enough about the real numbers already and building on this knowledge.)

# CHAPTER 2

## Set theory

### 2.1 Sets

The concept of a ‘set’ is extremely basic and pervades the whole of present-day mathematical thought. Any well-defined collection of objects is a set. For instance we have:

- the set of all students in your class
- the set of all prime numbers
- the set whose members are you and my left foot

As long as we have some way of specifying the collection, then we say it is a set. Our last example above has already made use of the notion of ‘membership’. If  $A$  is a set, then the members of the collection  $A$  are called either the *members* of  $A$  or the *elements* of  $A$ . (With a concept as simple as a set, there is no way to avoid such circular definitions: but it should be clear what is meant.) We write

$$x \in A$$

to denote that  $x$  is an element of  $A$ .

Some sets occur frequently in mathematics, and it is convenient to adopt a standard notation for them:

$\mathcal{N}$  : the set of all natural numbers (i.e. the numbers 1, 2, 3, etc.)

$\mathcal{Z}$  : the set of all integers (i.e. 0 and all positive and negative whole numbers)

$\mathcal{Q}$  : the set of all rational numbers (i.e. ‘fractions’)

$\mathcal{R}$  : the set of all real numbers

$\mathcal{R}^+$  : the set of all non-negative real numbers

Thus, for example,

$$x \in \mathcal{R}$$

means that  $x$  is a real number. And

$$(x \in \mathcal{Q}) \wedge (x > 0)$$

means that  $x$  is a positive rational number.

There are several ways of specifying a set. If it has a small number of elements we can list them. In this case we denote the set by enclosing the list of the elements in curly brackets; thus, for example,

$$\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

denotes the set consisting of the natural numbers 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

By use of 'dots' we can extend this notation to any finite set; e.g.

$$\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$$

denotes the set of the first  $n$  natural numbers. Again

$$\{2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, \dots, 53\}$$

could (given the right context) be used to denote the set of all primes up to 53.

Certain infinite sets can also be described by the use of 'dots' (only now the dots have no 'end'), e.g.

$$\{2, 4, 6, 8, \dots, 2n, \dots\}$$

denotes the set of all even natural numbers. Again,

$$\{\dots, -8, -6, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, \dots\}$$

denotes the set of all even integers.

In general, however, except for finite sets with only a small number of elements, sets are best described by giving the property which defines the set. If  $A(x)$  is some property, the set of all those  $x$  which satisfy  $A(x)$  is denoted by

$$\{x \mid A(x)\}$$

Or, if we wish to restrict the  $x$  to those which are members of a certain set  $X$ , we would write

$$\{x \in X \mid A(x)\}$$



This is read 'the set of all  $x$  in  $X$  such that  $A(X)$ '. For example:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{N} &= \{x \in \mathcal{Z} \mid x > 0\} \\ \mathcal{Q} &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid (\exists m, n \in \mathcal{Z})[(m > 0) \wedge (mx = n)]\} \\ \{\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2}\} &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x^2 = 2\} \\ \{1, 2, 3\} &= \{x \in \mathcal{N} \mid x < 4\}\end{aligned}$$

Two sets,  $A, B$  are *equal*, written  $A = B$ , if they have exactly the same elements. As the above example shows, equality of sets does not mean they have identical definitions; there are often many different ways of describing the same set. The definition of equality reflects rather the fact that a set is just a collection of objects.

If we have to prove that the sets  $A$  and  $B$  are equal, it is often quite difficult to prove in one go that they have the same elements. What is usually done is to split the proof into two parts:

- (a) Show that every member of  $A$  is a member of  $B$ .
- (b) Show that every member of  $B$  is a member of  $A$ .

Taken together, (a) and (b) clearly imply  $A = B$ . (The proof of both (a) and (b) is usually of the 'take an arbitrary element' variety. To prove (a), for instance, we must prove  $(\forall x \in A)(x \in B)$ ; so we take an arbitrary element  $x$  of  $A$  and show that  $x$  must be an element of  $B$ .)

The set notations introduced have obvious extensions. For instance we can write

$$\mathcal{Q} = \{m/n \mid m, n \in \mathcal{Z}, n \neq 0\}$$

and so on.

It is convenient in mathematics to introduce a set which has no elements: the *empty set* (or *null set*). There will only be one such set, of course, since any two such will have exactly the same elements and thus be (by definition) equal. The empty set is denoted by the Scandinavian letter

$$\emptyset$$

[Note that this is not the Greek letter  $\phi$ .] The empty set can be 'defined' in many ways; e.g.

$$\begin{aligned}\emptyset &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x^2 < 0\} \\ \emptyset &= \{x \in \mathcal{N} \mid 1 < x < 2\} \\ \emptyset &= \{x \mid x \neq x\}\end{aligned}$$

Notice that  $\emptyset$  and  $\{\emptyset\}$  are quite different sets.  $\emptyset$  is the empty set: it has NO members.  $\{\emptyset\}$  is a set which has ONE member. Hence

$$\emptyset \neq \{\emptyset\}$$

What is the case here is that

$$\emptyset \in \{\emptyset\}$$

(The fact that the single element of  $\{\emptyset\}$  is the empty set is irrelevant in this connection:  $\{\emptyset\}$  *does* have an element,  $\emptyset$  *does not*.)

A set  $A$  is called a *subset* of a set  $B$  if every element of  $A$  is a member of  $B$ . For example,  $\{1, 2\}$  is a subset of  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ . We write

$$A \subseteq B$$

to mean that  $A$  is a subset of  $B$ . If we wish to emphasize that  $A$  and  $B$  are unequal here, we write

$$A \subset B$$

and say that  $A$  is a *proper subset* of  $B$  (This usage compares with the ordering relations  $\leq$  and  $<$  on  $\mathcal{R}$ .)

Clearly, for any sets  $A, B$ , we have

$$A = B \text{ iff } (A \subseteq B) \wedge (B \subseteq A)$$

The set of *all* subsets of a set  $X$  is called the *power set* of  $X$ , denoted by  $\mathcal{P}(X)$ . For example, if  $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$ , then

$$\mathcal{P}(X) = \{\emptyset, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}, \{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{2, 3\}, \{1, 2, 3\}\}$$

(See Exercises 2.1 (6), (7) below for further examples.)

### Exercises 2.1

(1) What well-known set is this:

$$\{n \in \mathcal{N} \mid (n > 1) \wedge (\forall x, y \in \mathcal{N})[(xy = n) \Rightarrow (x = 1 \vee y = 1)]\}$$

(2) Let

$$P = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid \sin(x) = 0\} \quad , \quad Q = \{n\pi \mid n \in \mathcal{Z}\}$$

What is the relationship between  $P$  and  $Q$  ?

(3) Let

$$A = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid (x > 0) \wedge (x^2 = 3)\}$$

Give a simpler definition of the set  $A$ .

(4) Prove that for any set  $A$ :

$$\emptyset \subseteq A \quad \text{and} \quad A \subseteq A$$

(5) Prove that if  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq C$ , then  $A \subseteq C$

(6) List all subsets of the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ .

(7) List all subsets of the set  $\{1, 2, 3, \{1, 2\}\}$ .

(8) Can you find a set  $A$  for which  $\mathcal{P}(A) = \emptyset$ ?

(9) Let  $A = \{x \mid P(x)\}$ ,  $B = \{x \mid Q(x)\}$ , where  $P, Q$  are formulas such that  $\forall x[P(x) \Rightarrow Q(x)]$ . Prove that  $A \subseteq B$ .

(10) Prove that  $A \subseteq B$  if and only if  $\mathcal{P}(A) \subseteq \mathcal{P}(B)$ .

(11) Prove (by induction) that a set with exactly  $n$  elements has  $2^n$  subsets.

(12) Let

$$A = \{o, t, f, s, e, n\}$$

Give an alternative definition of the set  $A$ . (Hint: this is connected with  $\mathcal{N}$  but is not entirely mathematical.)

## 2.2 Operations on sets

There are various natural operations we can perform on sets. (They correspond *roughly* to addition, multiplication, and subtraction for integers.)

Given two sets  $A, B$  we can form the set of all objects which are members of either one of  $A$  and  $B$ . This set is called the *union* of  $A$  and  $B$  and is denoted by

$$A \cup B$$

Formally, this set has the definition

$$A \cup B = \{x \mid (x \in A) \vee (x \in B)\}$$

(Now the reader gets the first real inkling as to why we defined our precise use of 'or' to mean 'inclusive or'.) We show below how that can be illustrated diagrammatically.

We first of all introduce the notion of a *universal set*. It is rare in mathematics to discuss 'arbitrary sets'. One is generally only interested in sets of reals, or sets of integers, or so on. For instance, when discussing sets of reals it can be convenient to imagine that there is nothing else in

the world except reals. This prevents our having to keep saying things like ‘ $x$  is a real’ or ‘ $A$  is a set of reals’. When we do this, we are fixing  $\mathcal{R}$  to be the *universal set* for the duration of the discussion. This means that any set mentioned in the ensuing discussion will be *assumed* to be a subset of  $\mathcal{R}$ . Likewise if we fix  $\mathcal{Z}$  as universal set, or  $\mathcal{N}$ , etc.

Notice that there is not one universal set; rather we introduce one such whenever it is convenient to ignore all the possibilities other than the ones concerned. (If this is still confusing to you, it should become clearer when we look at set-theoretic complements in a short while.) And now to our diagram.

Fix some universal set  $U$ . We represent  $U$  by means of a rectangle on the page. The elements of  $U$  are represented by the ‘points’ within the rectangle. So, in terms of this representation, relative to our fixed universal set, all ‘objects’ lie inside our rectangle. Sets (i.e. subsets of  $U$ ) are denoted by encircling regions within  $U$ .

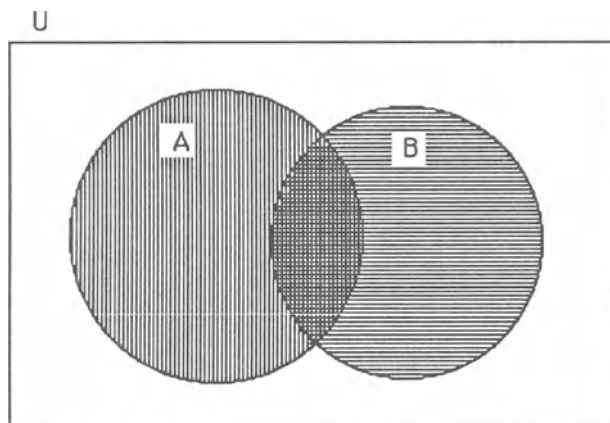


Figure 2.1: Union and Intersection

In Figure 2.1, the set  $A$  is represented by the interior of the left-hand circle, the region shaded vertically, and the set  $B$  is represented by the interior of the right-hand circle, the region shaded horizontally. The set  $A \cup B$  is represented now by the total shaded region (which includes a region that is shaded two ways here). Such a diagrammatic representation of sets is called a *Venn diagram*.

The *intersection* of the sets  $A, B$  is the set of all members which  $A$  and

$B$  have in common. It is denoted by

$$A \cap B$$

and has the formal definition

$$A \cap B = \{x \mid (x \in A) \wedge (x \in B)\}$$

In Figure 2.1, the set  $A \cap B$  is represented by the region which is doubly shaded.

Two sets  $A, B$  are said to be *disjoint* if they have no elements in common: that is, if  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ .

Once we have fixed a universal set we can introduce the notion of the *complement* of the set  $A$ . Relative to the universal set  $U$ , the complement of a set  $A$  is the set of all elements of  $U$  that are not in  $A$ . This set is denoted by  $A'$ , and has the formal definition

$$A' = \{x \in U \mid x \notin A\}$$

[Notice that we write  $x \notin A$  instead of  $\neg(x \in A)$ , for clarity.]

For instance, if the universal set is the set  $\mathcal{N}$  of natural numbers, and  $E$  is the set of even (natural) numbers, then  $E'$  is the set of odd (natural) numbers. In Figure 2.2,  $A'$  is represented by the unshaded region.

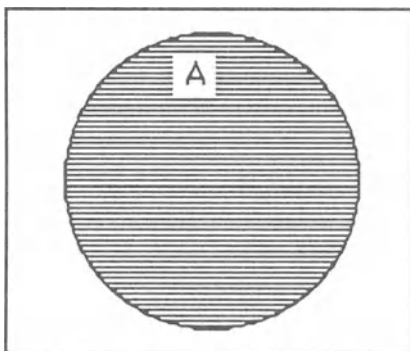


Figure 2.2: Complement

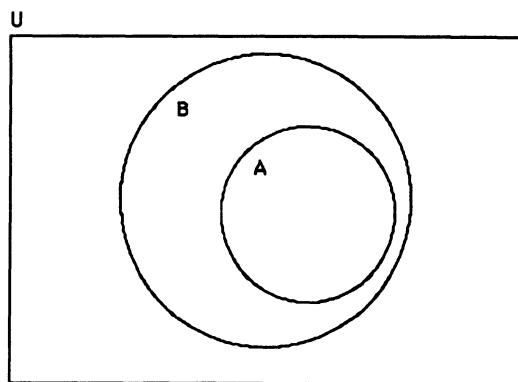


Figure 2.3: Inclusion

Figure 2.3 presents a Venn diagram illustrating the inclusion (subset) relation

$$A \subseteq B$$

The following theorem sums up the basic facts about the three set operations just discussed.

**Theorem 2.2.1** Let  $A, B, C$  be subsets of a universal set  $U$ .

- (1)  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$
- (2)  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$   
((1) and (2) are the distributive laws)
- (3)  $A \cup B = B \cup A$
- (4)  $A \cap B = B \cap A$   
((3) and (4) are the commutative laws)
- (5)  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$
- (6)  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$   
((5) and (6) are the distributive laws)
- (7)  $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$
- (8)  $(A \cap B)' = A' \cup B'$   
((7) and (8) are called the De Morgan laws)
- (9)  $A \cup A' = U$
- (10)  $A \cap A' = \emptyset$   
((9) and (10) are the complementation laws)

$$(11) (A')' = A$$

(self-inverse law)

*Proof:* The proof of parts (1) to (4) and of parts (9) to (11) are left as an exercise. For the remaining cases we give a Venn diagram proof for (5) and (7) and establish (6) and (8) using a logical argument

Consider part (5). We can represent this diagrammatically as in Figure 2.4. We have drawn the diagram to illustrate the most general (i.e. the most complex) case, which is when all the sets have elements in common with each of the other sets. We have also numbered each of the regions. Now let us see which regions correspond to which sets.

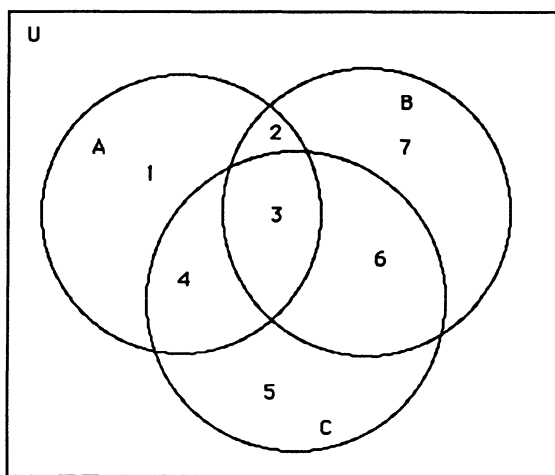


Figure 2.4: The distributive law

Well,

$A$  is represented by the regions 1, 2, 3, 4

and

$B \cap C$  is represented by the regions 3, 6 (common to  $B$  and  $C$ )

So,

$A \cup (B \cap C)$  is represented by the regions 1, 2, 3, 4, 6

Again,

$A \cup B$  is represented by the regions 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7

and

$A \cup C$  is represented by the regions 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

so

$(A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$  is represented by the regions  
1, 2, 3, 4, 6 (common to both)

But this is the same region that we obtained for  $A \cup (B \cap C)$  above.

Consider part (6). Here is a proof using a logical argument. Let

$$\begin{aligned} D &= A \cap (B \cup C) \\ E &= (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \end{aligned}$$

We prove first that  $D \subseteq E$ . Let  $x \in D$ . Then  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B \cup C$ . Since  $x \in B \cup C$ , either  $x \in B$  or  $x \in C$ , or both. In case  $x \in B$ , we have  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B$ , so  $x \in A \cap B$ . On the other hand, if  $x \notin B$ , then we must have  $x \in C$ , so  $x \in A$  and  $x \in C$ , giving  $x \in A \cap C$ . In either of these two cases,  $x \in E$ . Hence  $D \subseteq E$ .

Now we prove  $E \subseteq D$ . Let  $x \in E$ . There are two cases. Suppose first that  $x \in A \cap B$ . Then  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B$ , so  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B \cup C$ , so  $x \in D$ . On the other hand, if  $x \notin A \cap B$ , then  $x \in A \cap C$ , so again we obtain  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B \cup C$ , giving  $x \in D$ . Hence  $E \subseteq D$ .

Hence both  $D \subseteq E$  and  $E \subseteq D$ , and we conclude that  $D = E$ , proving (6).

We turn now to (7) and (8). We prove (7) by means of a Venn diagram argument. Figure 2.5 illustrates the situation.

Referring to the diagram,  $A \cup B$  is represented by the regions 1, 2, 3. Thus,  $(A \cup B)'$  is represented by the single remaining region 4.

Again,  $A'$  is represented by regions 3 and 4, and  $B'$  is represented by regions 1 and 4, so  $A' \cap B'$  is represented by the common region 4.

This proves (7).

We prove (8) by means of a logical argument. Let  $x \in (A \cap B)'$ . Thus  $x \notin A \cap B$ . Hence

$$\neg((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B))$$

This is the same as

$$(\neg(x \in A) \vee \neg(x \in B))$$



In other words

$$(x \notin A) \vee (x \notin B)$$

i.e.

$$(x \in A') \vee (x \in B')$$

i.e.

$$x \in A' \cup B'$$

This shows that  $(A \cap B)' \subseteq A' \cup B'$ . The above steps may be reversed to give  $A' \cup B' \subseteq (A \cap B)'$ , thereby completing the proof.  $\square$

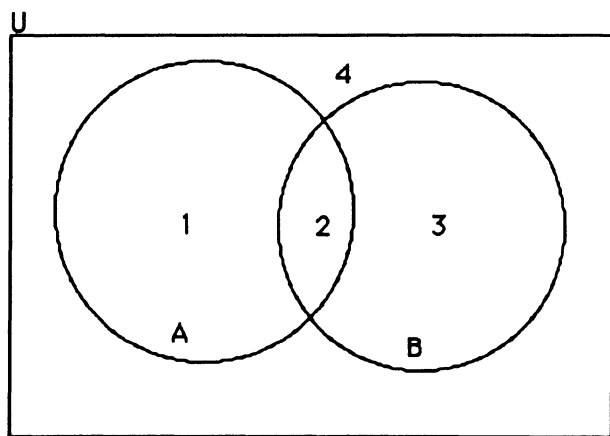


Figure 2.5: The De Morgan laws

### Exercises 2.2

- (1) Draw a Venn diagram to illustrate the fact

$$A \cup B \subseteq C$$

- (2) Draw a Venn diagram to illustrate the fact

$$A \subseteq B \cup C$$

- (3) For each of the following pairs of sets  $A, B$ , find  $A \cup B$  and  $A \cap B$ :

(a)  $\{a, b, c\}$  ,  $\{c, d, e, f\}$

$$(b) \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x < 0\}, \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x \geq 0\}$$

$$(c) \{1, 2, \{1, 2, 3\}\}, \{1, \{1, 2\}\}$$

- (4) Give two proofs of the fact that for any sets  $A, B$ :

$$A \cap B \subseteq A \subseteq A \cup B$$

one proof by Venn diagram, the other by a logical argument.

- (5) Prove the following statements:

$$A \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$$

$$A \cup \emptyset = A$$

$$A \cap A = A \cup A = A$$

- (6) Give Venn diagram proofs of Theorem 2.2.1 parts (1) to (4) and (9) to (11).

- (7) Give Venn diagram proofs of Theorem 2.2.1 parts (6) and (8) and logical argument proofs of parts (5) and (7).

- (8) By considering the sets  $A = \mathcal{R}$ ,  $B = \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $C =$  the set of irrationals, show that it is not always the case that

$$(A \cup B) \cap C = A \cup (B \cap C)$$

- (9) Show that the equality

$$(A \cap B) \cup C = A \cap (B \cup C)$$

is not always valid.

- (10) Prove the following:

$$(a) A \subseteq B \text{ iff } A \cup B = B.$$

$$(b) A \subseteq B \text{ iff } A \cap B = A.$$

$$(c) \text{ If } A \subseteq B \cup C \text{ and } A \cap B = \emptyset, \text{ then } A \subseteq C.$$

$$(d) \text{ If } A \subseteq C \text{ and } B \subseteq C, \text{ then } A \cup B \subseteq C.$$

$$(e) \text{ If } A \cup B \subseteq C \cup D, C \subseteq A, \text{ and } A \cap B = \emptyset, \text{ then } B \subseteq D.$$

- (11) Given two sets  $A, B$ , the *set difference*  $A - B$  is defined to be the set

$$A - B = \{x \mid x \in A \wedge x \notin B\}$$

Prove the following:

- (a)  $A - \emptyset = A$ .
- (b)  $\emptyset - A = \emptyset$ .
- (c)  $A - B = A \cap B'$ .
- (d)  $A \subseteq B$  iff  $A - B = \emptyset$ .
- (e) If  $A \subseteq B$ , then  $A - C \subseteq B - C$ .

- (12) Prove that  $\mathcal{P}(A \cap B) = \mathcal{P}(A) \cap \mathcal{P}(B)$ .
- (13) Prove that  $\mathcal{P}(A) \cup \mathcal{P}(B) \subseteq \mathcal{P}(A \cup B)$ . Give an example to show that equality is not always true here.
- (14) By using the set identities established in Theorem 2.2.1, give an *algebraic* (not a set-theoretic) proof of the identity

$$[A \cup (B \cap C)] \cap C = (A \cup B) \cap C$$

- (15) Use the distributive laws to give an algebraic proof of the identity

$$(A \cup B) \cap (C \cup D) = (A \cap C) \cup (A \cap D) \cup (B \cap C) \cup (B \cap D)$$

Does the result remain valid if we interchange  $\cap$  and  $\cup$  here? Justify your answer.

- (16) By now, you have probably noticed some similarities between set operations, propositional logic, and elementary integer arithmetic. The following table summarizes the situation by tabulating the various operations according to similarities in their behavior.

Arithmetic	Logic	Sets
$m + n$	$p \vee q$	$A \cup B$
$m \times n$	$p \wedge q$	$A \cap B$
$-n$	$\neg p$	$A'$

Carry out a systematic investigation of these comparisons with respect to the properties of commutativity, associativity, distributivity, and idempotence.

- (17) Write a short essay (say, two pages) that explains, as far as possible, the similarities catalogued in the previous question.

## 2.3 Intervals

Certain types of subset of the reals  $\mathcal{R}$  occur so frequently that it is convenient to introduce a special notation for them.

By an *interval* we mean an uninterrupted stretch of the real line. There are a number of different kinds of interval, for which there is a fairly widespread standard notation.

Let  $a, b \in \mathcal{R}, a < b$ . The *open interval*  $(a, b)$  is the set

$$(a, b) = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid a < x < b\}$$

The *closed interval*  $[a, b]$  is the set

$$[a, b] = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid a \leq x \leq b\}$$

The point to notice here is that neither  $a$  nor  $b$  is an element of  $(a, b)$ , but both  $a$  and  $b$  are elements of  $[a, b]$ . (This seemingly trivial distinction turns out to be highly significant in elementary real analysis.) Thus,  $(a, b)$  is the stretch of the real line beginning ‘just past’  $a$  and ending ‘just before’  $b$ , while  $[a, b]$  is the stretch beginning with  $a$  and ending with  $b$ .

The above notation extends in an obvious manner. We call

$$[a, b) = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid a \leq x < b\}$$

a *left-closed, right-open interval*, and

$$(a, b] = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid a < x \leq b\}$$

a *left-open, right-closed interval*.

Both  $[a, b)$  and  $(a, b]$  are sometimes referred to as *half-open* (or *half-closed*) intervals.

Finally, we set

$$\begin{aligned} (-\infty, a) &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x < a\} \\ (-\infty, a] &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x \leq a\} \\ (a, \infty) &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x > a\} \\ [a, \infty) &= \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x \geq a\} \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the symbol  $\infty$  is never coupled with a square bracket. This would be misleading, since  $\infty$  is *not* a number, just a useful symbol. In the above definitions it simply helps us to extend a convenient notation to cover another case.

### Exercises 2.3

- (1) Prove that the intersection of two intervals is again an interval. Is the same true for unions?
- (2) Taking  $\mathcal{R}$  as the universal set, express the following as simply as possible in terms of intervals and unions of intervals:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $[1, 3]'$                             | (b) $(1, 7]'$  |
| (c) $(5, 8]'$                             | (d) $(3, 7) \cup [6, 8]$                             |
| (e) $(-\infty, 3)' \cup (6, \infty)$      | (f) $\{\pi\}'$                                       |
| (g) $(1, 4] \cap [4, 10]$                 | (h) $(1, 2) \cap [2, 3)$                             |
| (i) $A'$ , where $A = (6, 8) \cap (7, 9]$ | (j) $A'$ , where $A = (-\infty, 5] \cup (7, \infty)$ |

## 2.4 Arbitrary unions and intersections

The associative laws allow us to form unions and intersections of arbitrary finite collections of sets by iterating the operations of union and intersection of pairs of sets. For example:

$$A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_{n-1} \cup A_n = (\dots((A_1 \cup A_2) \cup \dots) \cup A_{n-1}) \cup A_n$$

However, in mathematics we often need to consider unions and intersections of *infinite* collections of sets, and in this case the above approach will not work. Instead, we have to go back to the original ideas behind set union and intersection and formulate an alternative definition.

There are two distinct notations that are commonly used, depending on the context. Suppose first of all that to each element  $i$  of some set  $I$  there corresponds a set  $A_i$ . Then we refer to the collection

$$\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$$

as an *indexed family* (or *indexed set*) of sets and the set  $I$  as the *index set*.

For example, if  $P$  is the set of all prime numbers and

$$E_i = \{n \in \mathcal{N} \mid i \text{ is a factor of } n\}$$

for each  $i \in P$ , then we get the indexed family

$$\{E_i \mid i \in P\}$$

Again, if for each real number  $r$ ,  $X_r$  denotes the set of all rational numbers less than  $r$ , then we get the indexed family

$$\{X_r \mid r \in \mathcal{R}\}$$

Notice that in the first example, the family can be thought of as *enumerated* as an infinite sequence  $A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots$  (by taking  $A_1 = E_2$ ,  $A_2 = E_3$ ,  $A_3 = E_5$ , etc.), but this is not possible for the second example.

The *union* of an indexed family  $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  is defined to be the set of all those elements that lie in one or more of the sets  $A_i$  in the family. It is generally denoted by

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$$

Thus:

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i = \{a \mid (\exists i \in I)[a \in A_i]\}$$

The *intersection* of an indexed family  $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  is defined to be the set of all those elements that lie in all of the sets  $A_i$  in the family, and is generally denoted by

$$\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$$

Thus:

$$\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i = \{a \mid (\forall i \in I)[a \in A_i]\}$$

It should be noticed that in the case where the index set  $I$  consists of just two elements, say  $I = \{1, 2\}$ , then:

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i = A_1 \cup A_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i = A_1 \cap A_2$$

so the notions of arbitrary union and intersection over indexed families are generalizations of the notions of union and intersection of pairs of sets (and hence also of finite unions and intersections obtained by iteration of pair union and pair intersection).

Though the following theorem is essentially trivial, its proof provides a good illustration of the manner in which arbitrary unions and intersections are handled.

**Theorem 2.4.1** Let  $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  be an indexed family of sets. Then for any  $i_0 \in I$

$$A_{i_0} \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i \subseteq A_{i_0}$$

*Proof:* Suppose  $x \in A_{i_0}$ . Then  $(\exists i \in I)[x \in A_i]$  (in particular,  $i_0$  is such an  $i$ ). So by definition,  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ . This proves the first inclusion.

Now suppose  $x \in \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$ . Then  $(\forall i \in I)[x \in A_i]$ . So in particular,  $x \in A_{i_0}$ . This proves the second inclusion.  $\square$

Notice that the above proofs made no mention of whether the index set  $I$  was finite or infinite. Nor was any mention made of any *order* on the sets  $A_i$  in terms of the first set, the second set, etc. Indeed, the index set  $I$  might not have any particular ordering, so there may be no natural way to order the indexed family. The argument depended solely upon the definitions of indexed union and intersection in terms of quantifiers over the index set. The same is true for the proofs involved in the following theorem:

**Theorem 2.4.2** Let  $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  be an indexed family of sets, and let  $B$  be any set, all subsets of some universal set  $U$ . Then:

$$(1) B \cup \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i = \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cup A_i)$$

$$(2) B \cap \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i = \bigcap_{i \in I} (B \cap A_i)$$

$$(3) B \cap \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i = \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cap A_i)$$

$$(4) B \cup \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i = \bigcap_{i \in I} (B \cup A_i)$$

$$(5) \left( \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \right)' = \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i'$$

$$(6) \left( \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i \right)' = \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i'$$

*Proof:* We prove (1), (3), and (5) and leave the others as an exercise.

(1) Let  $x \in B \cup \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ . If  $x \in B$ , then  $x \in B \cup A_i$  for all  $i \in I$ , so  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cup A_i)$ . Otherwise,  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ , so for some  $i_0 \in I$ ,  $x \in A_{i_0}$ . Then  $x \in B \cup A_{i_0}$ , so again  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cup A_i)$ .

Conversely if  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cup A_i)$ , then for some  $i_0 \in I$ ,  $x \in B \cup A_{i_0}$ . If  $x \in B$ , then  $x \in B \cup \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ . Otherwise,  $x \in A_{i_0}$ , so  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ , and again  $x \in B \cup \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ .

(3) Let  $x \in B \cap \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ . Then  $x \in B$  and for some  $i_0 \in I$ ,  $x \in A_{i_0}$ . Thus  $x \in B \cap A_{i_0}$ , and it follows that  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cap A_i)$ .

Conversely, suppose  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} (B \cap A_i)$ . Then for some  $i_0 \in I$ ,  $x \in B \cap A_{i_0}$ . Hence  $x \in B$  and  $x \in A_{i_0}$ . Thus  $x \in B$  and  $x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ . Thus  $x \in B \cap \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ .

(5) Let  $x \in U$  be arbitrary. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x \in \left( \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \right)' & \text{ iff } x \notin \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \\ & \text{ iff } \neg(\exists i \in I)[x \in A_i] \\ & \text{ iff } (\forall i \in I)[x \notin A_i] \\ & \text{ iff } (\forall i \in I)[x \in A_i'] \\ & \text{ iff } x \in \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i' \end{aligned}$$

□

In the case where the index set is the set  $\mathcal{N}$  of natural numbers, we often write

$$\bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i$$

in place of  $\bigcup_{i \in \mathcal{N}} A_i$  and  $\bigcap_{i \in \mathcal{N}} A_i$ , respectively.

An alternative notation for arbitrary unions and intersections is used when the family of sets concerned is not indexed. Suppose that  $\mathcal{F}$  is some collection of sets. Then we write

$$\bigcup \mathcal{F}$$

for the set

$$\{x \mid (\exists A \in \mathcal{F})[x \in A]\}$$

and

$$\bigcap \mathcal{F}$$

for the set

$$\{x \mid (\forall A \in \mathcal{F})[x \in A]\}$$



Thus, in the case where  $\mathcal{F} = \{A_i \mid i \in I\}$ , we have:

$$\bigcup \mathcal{F} = \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$$

$$\bigcap \mathcal{F} = \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$$

### Exercises 2.4

- (1) Complete the proof of Theorem 2.4.2.
- (2) For each  $n \in \mathcal{N}$ , let  $A_n = \{n\}$ . What are  $\bigcup_{n \in \mathcal{N}} A_n$  and  $\bigcap_{n \in \mathcal{N}} A_n$ ?
- (3) For each  $r \in \mathcal{R}^+$ , let  $A_r = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid 0 \leq x < r\}$ , where  $\mathcal{R}^+$  denotes the set of all strictly positive reals. What are  $\bigcup_{r \in \mathcal{R}^+} A_r$  and  $\bigcap_{r \in \mathcal{R}^+} A_r$ ?
- (4) Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a family of sets. Prove that  $\bigcup \mathcal{F}$  is the smallest set  $X$  such that  $A \subseteq X$  for all  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ , in the sense that:
  - $A \subseteq \bigcup \mathcal{F}$  for all  $A \in \mathcal{F}$ ;
  - if  $A \subseteq X$  for any set  $X$ , then  $\bigcup \mathcal{F} \subseteq X$ .
- (5) Formulate and prove a similar characterization of  $\bigcap \mathcal{F}$ .

## 2.5 Cartesian products

The related notions of *ordered pairs* and the *Cartesian product* of two sets generalizes the idea of the two-dimensional Euclidean plane and the Cartesian coordinate system in plane geometry.

The *ordered pair* of two objects  $a$  and  $b$  (presented in that order) is an object  $(a, b)$  associated with these objects (in that order) such that two ordered pairs  $(a, b)$  and  $(x, y)$  are *equal* if and only if  $a = x$  and  $b = y$ .

The use of the adjective ‘ordered’ distinguishes the ordered pair  $(a, b)$  of  $a, b$  from the *unordered pair* (usually just referred to as the *pair*)  $\{a, b\}$ . When we write the pair set  $\{a, b\}$ , the order in which the elements  $a, b$  are presented is not important:  $\{a, b\} = \{b, a\}$ . But for the ordered pair, we only have  $(a, b) = (b, a)$  in the trivial case  $a = b$ .

The reader will doubtless have noticed that the notation adopted for ordered pairs is the same as that used to denote open intervals of the real

line. This is an unfortunate clash, since the notions of open intervals and ordered pairs are quite different. Of course, in the case where the objects  $a, b$  are not real numbers, the expression  $(a, b)$  is not ambiguous; it must mean the ordered pair. But if  $a, b$  are reals, care has to be exercised in interpreting this expression. Usually the context is enough to make the intended meaning clear.

Given two sets  $A$  and  $B$ , the *Cartesian product* of  $A, B$  is defined to be the set:

$$A \times B = \{(a, b) \mid a \in A \wedge b \in B\}$$

For example, if  $A = \{1, 2\}$  and  $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$ , then

$$A \times B = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4)\}$$

Notice that Cartesian product is in general not commutative. In the case of the above example, we have:

$$B \times A = \{(2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1), (4, 2)\}$$

So, for instance, we have  $(1, 2) \in A \times B$  and  $(1, 2) \notin B \times A$ .

**Theorem 2.5.1** Let  $A, B, C, D$  be sets. Then:

- (a)  $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$
- (b)  $A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$
- (c)  $(A \times B) \cap (C \times D) = (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$
- (d)  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) \subseteq (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$

*Proof:* (a) We present a ‘double-inclusion proof’. Suppose first that  $(x, y) \in A \times (B \cup C)$ . Then  $x \in A$  and  $y \in B \cup C$ . If  $y \in B$ , then  $(x, y) \in A \times B$ ; if  $y \in C$ , then  $(x, y) \in A \times C$ . In either case,  $(x, y) \in (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ . Thus  $A \times (B \cup C) \subseteq (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ .

Conversely, suppose  $(x, y) \in (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ . If  $(x, y) \in A \times B$ , then  $x \in A$  and  $y \in B$ , so  $y \in B \cup C$  and hence  $(x, y) \in A \times (B \cup C)$ ; if  $(x, y) \in A \times C$ , then  $x \in A$  and  $y \in B \cup C$ , so again  $(x, y) \in A \times (B \cup C)$ . Thus  $(A \times B) \cup (A \times C) \subseteq A \times (B \cup C)$ .

This proves (a).

(b) We present a single ‘iff’ proof, rather than the ‘double-inclusion’ proof used for part (a). For any ordered pair  $(x, y)$  (of elements of the appropriate universal set), we have:

$$(x, y) \in A \times (B \cap C) \quad \text{iff} \quad x \in A \wedge y \in B \cap C$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{iff } x \in A \wedge [y \in B \wedge y \in C] \\
&\text{iff } [x \in A \wedge y \in B] \wedge [x \in A \wedge y \in C] \\
&\text{iff } [(x, y) \in A \times B] \wedge [(x, y) \in A \times C] \\
&\text{iff } (x, y) \in (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Let  $(x, y)$  be any ordered pair (of elements of the appropriate universal set). Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
(x, y) \in (A \times B) \cap (C \times D) &\text{ iff } (x, y) \in A \times B \text{ and } (x, y) \in C \times D \\
&\text{ iff } x \in A \text{ and } y \in B \text{ and } x \in C \text{ and } y \in D \\
&\text{ iff } x \in A \cap C \text{ and } y \in B \cap D \\
&\text{ iff } (x, y) \in (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Notice that this is an inclusion, not an identity. (The proof that these two sets are not always equal is left as one of the assigned exercises.) Let  $(x, y) \in (A \times B) \cup (C \times D)$ . Then  $(x, y) \in A \times B$  or  $(x, y) \in C \times D$ . In the former case, we have  $x \in A$  and  $y \in B$ , so certainly  $x \in A \cup C$  and  $y \in B \cup D$ , giving  $(x, y) \in (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ , and similarly in the other case. This proves (d).  $\square$

The notion of an ordered pair generalizes to what is known as an (ordered) *n-tuple*. The *n-tuple* of *n* objects  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  (given in that order) is an object  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  having the property that

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \text{ iff } [a_1 = b_1 \wedge a_2 = b_2 \wedge \dots \wedge a_n = b_n]$$

For example,  $(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), (5, 4, 3, 2, 1), (5, 4, 3, 1, 2)$  are all different 5-tuples. A 3-tuple is sometimes called a *triple* (or *ordered triple*).

### Exercises 2.5

- (1) Let  $A = \{1, 3, 5\}$ ,  $B = \{2, 4\}$ . Find  $A \times A$ ,  $B \times B$ ,  $A \times B$ ,  $B \times A$ .
- (2) Show that the inclusion

$$(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) \subseteq (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$$

proved in Theorem 2.5.1 cannot be extended to an identity.

- (3) Let  $A, B$  be non-empty sets. Prove that  $A \times B = B \times A$  iff  $A = B$ .
- (4) Is the above result true if one of  $A, B$  is empty? Explain.
- (5) Show that if  $A, B, C$  are non-empty, then  $A \times (B \times C) \neq (A \times B) \times C$ .
- (6) Prove that if  $A$  has  $m$  elements and  $B$  has  $n$  elements, then  $A \times B$  has  $mn$  elements.

# CHAPTER 3

## Functions

### 3.1 The function concept

The concept of a function from real numbers to real numbers will almost certainly be familiar to you already. For instance, the equation

$$y = x^2 + x + 1$$

determines a function from real numbers to real numbers. We can draw its graph as in Figure 3.1. We are able to plot the graph of this function because, for each value of  $x$  in  $\mathcal{R}$ , we can calculate the corresponding value of  $y$ : we just substitute the value of  $x$  concerned into the equation and carry out the computation. What the above equation does is provide us with a *general rule* for calculating values.

Functions from real numbers to real numbers defined by equations in this fashion are special cases of the general *function* concept that we introduce next.

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be any non-empty sets. A *function from  $A$  to  $B$*  is a rule that associates with each member of  $A$  a unique member of  $B$ .

We make no restrictions on the rule: the only crucial points are that:

- the rule must associate a member of  $B$  to *every* element of  $A$ ;
- the element of  $B$  that we associate with a given member  $a$  of  $A$  must be *unique* for that  $a$ .

We write

$$f : A \rightarrow B$$

to indicate that  $f$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ .

Now, in the case of a function as above, given by an equation, we can refer to that function by first of all stipulating that it is *from* real numbers *to* real numbers, and secondly giving its equation. But our definition allows

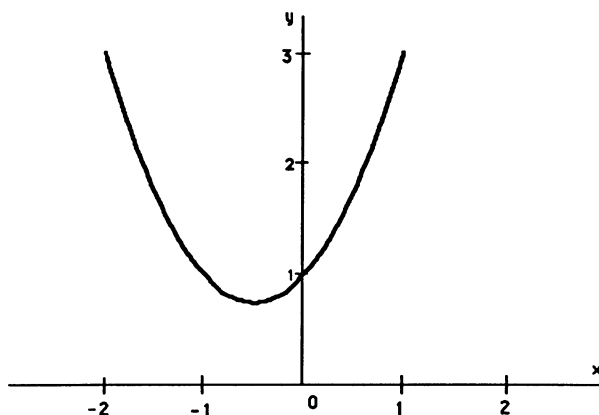


Figure 3.1: Graph of the function  $y = x^2 + x + 1$

for all kinds of ‘rules’, not just equations. We give a number of examples presently. But first it is convenient to introduce some further nomenclature and a little notation.

If  $a \in A$ , we denote the unique element of  $B$  that the rule associates to  $a$  by

$$f(a)$$

We refer to the element  $a$  of  $A$  here as an *argument* of the function, and the corresponding element  $f(a)$  of  $B$  as the *value* of the function at that argument (or sometimes the *image* of the point  $a$  under  $f$ ).

Thus, in our original example above, we have  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  and

$$f(x) = x^2 + x + 1$$

and if  $a$  is any argument for  $f$ , then the *value* of the function  $f$  at that argument  $a$  is the real number  $a^2 + a + 1$ . For instance, the value  $f(5)$  associated with argument 5 is 31 and the value  $f(-2)$  associated with argument -2 is 3.

Notice that we have not defined the concept of ‘a function’, but rather ‘a function from a set  $A$  to a set  $B$ ’. This distinction should be borne in mind at all times, as it affects our subsequent definitions to a very great degree.

One can think of a function as a sort of ‘black box’ (Figure 3.2) that has an input slot and an output slot. At the input slot there is a tray,  $A$ ,

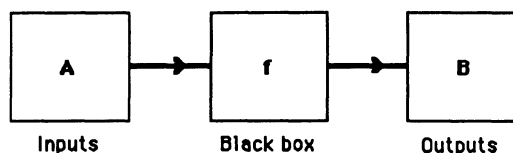


Figure 3.2: The three parts of a function

full of possible inputs (the arguments), and at the output slot there is a second tray,  $B$ , designed to take all the ‘possible’ outputs (the values). We may feed into the black box any of the members of  $A$ . The black box then processes our input and produces a single output, which will always be a member of the set  $B$ .

It should be stressed that whereas it is the ‘rule’  $f$  that actually produces the value for a given argument, both the input tray  $A$  and the output tray  $B$  are integral parts of the function. (You cannot purchase a black box without these two attachments!) The importance of this stipulation will become apparent in due course.

If  $f : A \rightarrow B$ , we refer to the set  $A$  as the *domain* of  $f$  and the set  $B$  as the *codomain*.

## 3.2 Examples of functions

We give a number of examples of functions. Notice the different ways of specifying the rule involved.

- (1) First of all, there are the functions  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by polynomials, such as the example  $f(x) = x^2 + x + 1$  given above.
- (2) Then there are the rational functions  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  such as

$$f(x) = \frac{x^3 - 4x^2 + x - 11}{(x^2 + 1)^5}$$

- (3) The *absolute value* function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}^+$  is defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

(where  $\mathcal{R}^+ = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x \geq 0\}$ ). This function is not defined by an equation: rather the rule consists of two separate cases. In words, the rule is: given  $x$  as argument, the value is  $x$  if  $x \geq 0$  and is  $-x$  if  $x < 0$ . Since for each  $x$  there is exactly one possible value for  $f(x)$  (because no  $x$  satisfies both  $x \geq 0$  and  $x < 0$ ), this does indeed define a function. We usually write  $|x|$  instead of  $f(x)$ , and call  $|x|$  the *absolute value* of  $x$  (or the *modulus* or *mod*) of  $x$ .

- (4) And there are the so-called analytic functions from  $\mathcal{R}$  to  $\mathcal{R}$  such as  $f(x) = \sin x$ ,  $f(x) = \log |x|$ ,  $f(x) = e^x$ .

- (5) One can combine various kinds of function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  to form ‘hybrids’ such as

$$f(x) = \frac{\sin^2 4x - 3x^2 + 21}{\cos 2x + e^{2x}} + \log |x|$$

- (6) Consider next the function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \\ 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \end{cases}$$

Try to draw a graph of this function.

- (7) A function that occurs both in number theory and in computer science is the ‘greatest integer function’  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$  defined by:

$$f(x) = \text{the largest integer } z \text{ such that } z \leq x$$

Draw a graph of this function.

- (8) Given any two sets  $A, B$  and any element  $b_0 \in B$ , there is a *constant function*  $f : A \rightarrow B$  defined by:

$$f(a) = b_0 \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

- (9) For any set  $A$ , the *identity function*,  $I_A$ , on  $A$  is defined by:

$$I_A(a) = a \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

- (10) Let  $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ ,  $B = \{c, d, e\}$ . Define  $f : A \rightarrow B$  by

$$f(a) = c, f(b) = d, f(c) = c, f(d) = e$$

(In this case the 'rule' is determined by listing all the argument and value pairs individually.)

- (11) If  $U$  is a universal set and  $A$  is any subset of  $U$ , then associated with  $A$  is the *characteristic function* of  $A$ ,  $\chi_A : U \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ , defined by:

$$\chi_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in A \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin A \end{cases}$$

- (12) Let  $A, B$  be non-empty sets. The *canonical projections*,  $\pi_A, \pi_B$ , from the Cartesian product set  $A \times B$  onto the sets  $A, B$ , respectively, are defined by

$$\pi_A(a, b) = a \quad (\forall (a, b) \in A \times B)$$

$$\pi_B(a, b) = b \quad (\forall (a, b) \in A \times B)$$

- (13) If  $U$  is a universal set and  $V$  is any subset of  $U$ , then we can define a function  $f : \mathcal{P}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(V)$  by:

$$f(A) = A \cap V \quad (\forall A \subseteq U)$$

- (14) Let  $U$  be the set of all countries in the world and  $C$  the set of all cities, and define  $f : U \rightarrow C$  by:

$$f(a) = \text{the capital city of } a \quad (\forall a \in U)$$

- (15) Let  $P$  denote the following computer program:



```

begin
var A:integer;
read A;
print (A*A + A + 1);
end

```

Then  $P$  specifies a function  $f : \mathcal{Z} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$ . (Actually, this is only correct 'in theory'. In practice, the computer system on which the program is run will have a maximum integer input/output size (often known as MAXINT), and then the function determined by the program *running on that machine* has domain and codomain  $\{n \in \mathcal{Z} \mid -\text{MAXINT} \leq n \leq \text{MAXINT}\}$ .)

- (16) To take another example from computer science, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a compiler for a programming language  $L$  and a computer  $K$ . Let  $P$  be the set of all properly written programs in  $L$ . Let  $F$  be the set of all machine language programs for the computer  $K$ . Then  $\mathcal{C}$  determines a function from  $P$  to  $F$ . For each source-code program  $p$  in  $P$ , the compiler produces an object-code, machine language program  $\mathcal{C}(p)$  that can be run on  $K$ .

- (17) Let  $T$  be the set of all books in a library, and consider the following instruction:

Given any book  $b$ , count all the commas that occur in  $b$ .

This determines a function  $f : T \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$ . The rule involved in this function can also be expressed as:

$$f(b) = \text{the number of commas that occur in } b$$

- (18) Let  $P$  be the set of all people, and define  $f : P \rightarrow P$  by:

$$f(p) = \text{the father of } p \quad (\forall p \in P)$$

- (19) One final example. Suppose  $T$  is a telephone directory, and let  $A$  be the set of all listed subscribers. Assume every telephone number consists of 7 digits, and let  $N$  be the set of all 7-digit numbers. Consider the following procedure. Given the name and address of a particular subscriber, look up their telephone number on the directory. Does this determine a function  $f$  from  $A$  to  $N$ ? The answer is 'maybe'. There are two things that could go wrong.

First of all, some subscribers might have an unlisted number. The above rule would not produce a result for such inputs. This violates a basic requirement for a function that every input from the domain leads to an output value.

Suppose now we eliminate this problem by redefining the set  $A$  to consists of only those subscribers with a listed number. Now do we have a function?

Again, it is possible that we do not. Some subscribers might have two or more numbers listed. This violates the requirement for a function that any input argument results in only one output value.

We may eliminate this second problem by modifying the procedure so that for each listed subscriber, look up the *first* telephone number listed for that subscriber. Now the procedure does determine a function from  $A$  to  $N$ .

We end this section with a brief discussion about what it means for two functions to be 'equal'.

Consider the following two definitions of functions.

- $f$  has domain  $\mathcal{N}$ , codomain  $\mathcal{N}$ , and rule

$$f(n) = n^2 - 2n + 1$$

- $g$  has domain  $\mathcal{N}$ , codomain  $\mathcal{N}$ , and rule

$$g(n) = (n - 1)^2$$

The functions  $f$  and  $g$  have the same domain and the same codomain, but different rules. The first rule involves a squaring, a doubling, a subtraction, and an addition; the second consists of a subtraction and a squaring. If you were to follow each rule (mentally or using a hand calculator) to evaluate, say,  $f(3)$  and  $g(3)$ , you would perform different sequences of operations.

But of course, as everyone knows, the two functions  $f, g$  will give rise to exactly the same values in every case. That is to say, for all  $n \in \mathcal{N}$ ,  $f(n) = g(n)$ . Should we then consider  $f$  and  $g$  as different functions?

The answer is that we do *not*, in fact, regard these two functions as different. The notion of *equality* that we apply to functions in mathematics renders the two functions  $f$  and  $g$  as being *equal*.

In general, we say two functions  $f, g$  are *equal* iff they have the same domain (say  $A$ ), the same codomain (say  $B$ ), and for every  $a \in A$ ,  $f(a) = g(a)$ .

Thus, equality of functions depends upon the domains being equal, the codomains being equal, and the ‘actions’ being equal. We do *not* require that the rules are the same.

This definition of function equality means that we should not really speak of a ‘function’ as *being* a rule that takes arguments from the domain and produces values in the codomain. Rather a function is *determined* by such a rule. It is not the rule itself that is the function, even assuming we are careful to specify the domain and codomain (as we should). It is the argument-to-value *process* the rule determines that is ‘the function’.

### Exercises 3.2

- (1) Find ten further examples of functions, five mathematical, five connected with everyday life. In each case, be sure to specify the domain, the codomain, and the rule, and verify that your example is indeed a function.
- (2) Give four functions, two mathematical two non-mathematical, specifying each by two different rules.
- (3) Find, if possible, examples of functions  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  having the following properties:
  - (a)  $m < n \Rightarrow f(m) < f(n)$
  - (b)  $m < n \Rightarrow f(m) > f(n)$
  - (c)  $m < n \Rightarrow f(m) = f(n)$
  - (d) if  $m, n$  are odd, then  $m < n \Rightarrow f(m) < f(n)$  but if  $m, n$  are even, then  $f(m) = f(n)$ . What happens (for your example) in the case where one of  $m, n$  is even and the other odd?
- (4) Most hand calculators provide a ‘square root’ function  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$  for real numbers  $x$ . Give a precise definition of this function.
- (5) Define  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  and  $g : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \text{maximum}(x, -x) \\ g(x) &= |x| \end{aligned}$$

Prove that  $f$  and  $g$  are equal.

- (6) Explain why the following functions  $f$  and  $g$  are not equal:

$$f(x) = x - 2 \quad , \quad g(x) = (x^2 - 4)/(x + 2)$$

(The variable  $x$  ranges over real numbers.)

- (7) Given two sets  $A, B$  with  $A \subseteq B$ , the *inclusion function*  $i : A \rightarrow B$  is defined by

$$i(a) = a \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

What is the relationship between this function and the identity function  $I_A$  on  $A$ ? Be as precise as you can.

- (8) Let the universe be  $\mathcal{R}$  and let  $A = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid 1 \leq x < 5\}$ . Sketch the graph of each of the following characteristic functions:

$$(a) \chi_A \quad (b) \chi_{A'} \quad (c) \chi_{\{2\}} \quad (d) \chi_{\mathcal{N}}.$$

- (9) Let  $U$  be the universe, and let  $A \subseteq U$  be such that  $A \neq \emptyset$  and  $A \neq U$ . Identify each of the following sets.

- (a)  $\{x \in U \mid \chi_A(x) = 1\}$   
 (b)  $\{x \in U \mid \chi_A(x) = 0\}$   
 (c)  $\{x \in U \mid \chi_A(x) = -1\}$

### 3.3 One-one and onto functions

One of the requirements that any function must fulfil (in order to *be* a function) is that any argument produces at most one value (in fact, exactly one value). Though advanced-level mathematics textbooks sometimes speak of ‘multiple-valued functions’, such terminology is restricted to highly specialized purposes, and may be ignored here. For our purposes (and for practically all of mathematics), no function can produce two different values for the same argument. If it does, it simply is not a function.

This requirement should not be confused with the possibility of different arguments producing the same value. This can, and does, happen quite often. That is to say, for a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$ , it may happen that two different arguments  $a_1, a_2$  both produce the same value, i.e.  $f(a_1) = f(a_2)$ .

For example, the function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$ . This is a well-defined function. In particular, for every real number *argument* there is exactly one *value*. But *different arguments* can lead to *the same value*: for instance,  $f(1) = f(-1) = 1$ .

If a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is such that it never happens that different arguments lead to the same value, we say that  $f$  is *one-one*, or *injective* (or that  $f$  is an *injection*).

Thus,  $f$  is one-one if distinct inputs produce distinct outputs. In symbols:

$f : A \rightarrow B$  is one-one iff

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[a \neq b \Rightarrow f(a) \neq f(b)]$$

Alternatively, we may express this condition using the contrapositive:

$f : A \rightarrow B$  is one-one iff

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[f(a) = f(b) \Rightarrow a = b]$$

Notice that whether or not a function is one-one can depend critically on the domain of that function (and not just on the rule). The function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$  is not one-one (as observed above), but the function  $g : \mathcal{R}^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $g(x) = x^2$  is one-one: any two distinct non-negative real arguments do produce distinct values. The rule used to define  $f$  and  $g$  is the same, but they differ in their domains.

Now let's turn our attention to the codomain, the set  $B$  of 'possible' values (or outputs) for a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . We have enclosed the word 'possible' in quotation marks here for the following reason. The codomain is an integral part of the specification of a function (the output tray is an integral part of our black-box apparatus). But it is possible that not every element of  $B$  is actually produced by the function (some of the space in the output tray  $B$  is not needed, the black box will never be able to fill  $B$ ). If every member of  $B$  is in fact the value of the function at some argument (that is, if it is possible to fill tray  $B$ ), we say  $f$  is *onto*, or *surjective* (or that  $f$  is a *surjection*).

In symbols, a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is *onto* iff

$$(\forall b \in B)(\exists a \in A)[f(a) = b]$$

Note the order of the quantifiers in the above condition. For every  $b$  in  $B$  it must be possible to find an  $a$  in  $A$  such that  $f(a) = b$ .

For example, the function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$  is not onto, since no negative real is the value of the function at any argument: the function only produces non-negative values. On the other hand, the function  $g : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}^+$  defined by the same formula  $g(x) = x^2$  is onto, since every non-negative real is the value of the function at some argument. (What argument?)

A *pre-image* of an element  $b \in B$  for a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is any  $a$  element of  $A$  for which  $f(a) = b$ . For example, if  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is defined by  $f(x) = x^2 + 3$ , then 1 and -1 are both pre-images of 4.

Clearly, a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is one-one if each element of  $B$  has *at most one* pre-image under  $f$ . And  $f$  is onto if *every* element of  $B$  has a pre-image under  $f$ .

We illustrate the above notions by means of our original example of the rule determined by the equation

$$y = x^2 + x + 1$$

This determines a function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2 + x + 1$ .

Is  $f$  one-one? That is, can we find distinct reals  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  such that  $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$  (in which case it will not be one-one), or is it the case that

$$(\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{R})[x_1 \neq x_2 \Rightarrow f(x_1) \neq f(x_2)]$$

(in which case it will be one-one). A quick glance at Figure 3.1 shows us that

$$f(-1) = f(0) = 1$$

Hence  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is not one-one.

Is  $f$  onto? That is, does every element of  $\mathcal{R}$  occur as a value of  $f$  for some argument? Again, the Figure 3.1 provides the answer. The number 0 is never a value of  $f$  (Indeed, no number less than 0.75 is a value of  $f$ ). Hence  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is not onto.

The same equation  $y = x^2 + x + 1$  does however determine a function  $g : \mathcal{R}^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ . The only difference between this function and the previous one is that our new function has a different domain, namely the non-negative reals. (We are no longer allowed to input negative numbers into our 'black box'.) The graph of this function is illustrated in Figure 3.3.

The function  $g : \mathcal{R}^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  so defined is clearly one-one: it is indeed increasing: if  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $g(x_1) < g(x_2)$ . But it is still not onto, for 0 is not a value, and neither is any real number less than 1.

Finally, consider the function  $h : \mathcal{R}^+ \rightarrow A$  defined by the same formula  $h(x) = x^2 + x + 1$ , but with the codomain

$$A = \{x \in \mathcal{R} \mid x \geq 1\}$$

This function is (clearly) both one-one and onto.

A function which is one-one and onto is sometimes called a *bijection*.

Let us now briefly review our definitions. A *function* from a non-empty set  $A$  to a set  $B$  is (determined by) a rule that associates with each element  $a$  of  $A$  a unique element  $f(a)$  of  $B$ , called the *value* of  $f$  at  $a$ . We write  $f : A \rightarrow B$  to indicate that  $f$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ . The set  $A$  is the *domain* of  $f$ ; the set  $B$  is the *codomain*. The elements of  $A$  are called *arguments* of the function. In specifying a function, it is not enough to give the rule: the domain and codomain must also be given.

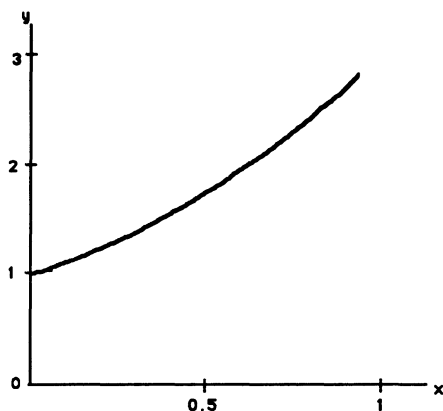


Figure 3.3: Graph of the function  $y = x^2 + x + 1$  for  $x \geq 0$

The function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is *one-one* (or *injective*) if distinct arguments in  $A$  give rise to distinct values in  $B$ . And  $f$  is *onto* (or *surjective*) if every element of  $B$  is a value of  $f$  for some argument. A function which is both one-one and onto is called a *bijection*.

Functions are also called *mappings*, *maps* or *transformations* (though each of these words tends to be reserved for special kinds of functions).

Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . If  $X \subseteq A$ , we refer to the set

$$\{f(x) \mid x \in X\}$$

as the *range* of  $f$  on  $X$ . Thus the range of  $f$  on a subset  $X$  of the domain is the set of all values of  $f$  for arguments taken from the set  $X$ . An alternative way to express this definition is as the set

$$\{b \in B \mid (\exists x \in X)(f(x) = b)\}$$

The range of  $f$  on  $X$  is denoted by

$$f[X]$$

We refer to the set  $f[A]$  simply as the *range* of  $f$ .

Clearly, an alternative definition of an *onto* function is one for which the range and the codomain coincide.

*Exercises 3.3*

- (1) Let  $A = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ . List all the functions from  $A$  to  $B$ .
- (2) List those functions in question (1) which are
- (a) one-one;    (b) onto;    (c) bijective.

In each case, identify the range of the function.

- (3) For each of the functions listed in Section 3.2, say whether the function is one-one, onto, or both, and identify the range. Justify your answers.
- (4) Let  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  be defined by  $f(x) = x^2 - 1$ .
- (a) What is the value of  $f$  at  $-10$  ?
- (b) What is  $f(-10)$  ?
- (c) What argument of  $f$  is associated with value  $80$  ?
- (d) What is  $f(80)$  ?
- (e) What is the image of  $4$  under  $f$  ?
- (f) What is a pre-image of  $15$  ?
- (g) List all pre-images of  $12$ .
- (h) List all pre-images of  $-9$ .

- (5) Define  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x + |x|)$$

Evaluate  $f(0)$ ,  $f(1)$ ,  $f(2)$ . Is  $f$  one-one? Is  $f$  onto? Justify your answers. What is the range of  $f$  on (a)  $\mathcal{R}$  ; (b)  $\mathcal{R}^+$  ?

- (6) Which of the following functions are one-one?

- (a)  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ ,  $f(x) = 5x + 6$
- (b)  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ ,  $f(x) = x^3$
- (c)  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$ ,  $f(x) = (x, x)$
- (d)  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ ,  $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$
- (e)  $f : \mathcal{Z} \times \mathcal{Z} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$ ,  $f(m, n) = m - n$

Which of these functions is onto?



- (7) Define  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ x - 1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Prove that  $f$  is one-one. Is  $f$  onto? What is the range of  $f$  on

(a)  $\mathcal{R}$  ; (b)  $\mathcal{R}^+$  ?

- (8) Define  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  by

$$f(n) = \begin{cases} 2n & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ n & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \end{cases}$$

Show that  $f$  is one-one. Is  $f$  onto?

- (9) Let  $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, \dots\}$ , the set of odd natural numbers, and  $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8, \dots\}$ , the set of even natural numbers. Give examples of functions from  $A$  to  $B$  which are:

- (a) One-one but not onto.
- (b) Onto but not one-one.
- (c) Neither one-one nor onto.
- (d) One-one and onto.

- (10) For each of your examples in the previous question, identify the range of the function on (a)  $\{1, 3, 5, 7\}$  ; (b)  $A$ .

- (11) Define  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  by

$$f(n) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } n \text{ is not prime} \\ n & \text{if } n \text{ is prime} \end{cases}$$

Let  $P$  be the set of all primes,  $K$  the set of all non-primes (in  $\mathcal{N}$ ). Identify the sets  $f[\mathcal{N}]$ ,  $f[P]$ ,  $f[K]$ .

- (12) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . Show that  $f$  is not one-one iff there are elements  $x, y \in A$  such that  $x \neq y$  and  $f[\{x, y\}]$  has only one element.
- (13) Define  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by  $f(x) = x^2 + x + 1$ . What is  $f[\mathcal{R}]$  ? What is  $f[\mathcal{R}^+]$  ?
- (14) Let  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$ . Show that there is a set  $A \subseteq \mathcal{N}$  such that  $h : A \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is one-one, where we define

$$h(n) = f(n) \quad (\forall n \in A)$$

Show further that there is a set  $B \subseteq \mathcal{N}$  such that  $g : A \rightarrow B$  is a bijection, where we define

$$g(n) = h(n) \quad (\forall n \in A)$$

### 3.4 Composition and inverse functions

Suppose  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  are given. Then we can define a function  $h : A \rightarrow C$  by the following rule: given  $a \in A$ , use rule  $f$  to calculate  $b = f(a)$  and then use rule  $g$  to calculate  $g(b)$  for this  $b$ ; the resulting element of  $C$  (being uniquely defined) shall be  $h(a)$ . In symbols:

$$h(a) = g(f(a)) \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

We denote the function  $h$  so defined by  $g \circ f$  and refer to this function as the *composition* of  $g$  and  $f$ .

More generally, we can define the composition  $g \circ f$  from  $A$  to  $C$  whenever  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  where  $B$  is a set such that  $f[A] \subseteq B$ . The important point is that  $g(b)$  should be defined for every value  $b$  of  $f$ .

For example, if  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is defined by  $f(x) = 2x + 1$  and  $g : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is defined by  $g(x) = x^2 + \sin x$ , then  $g \circ f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  is defined, and can be computed by means of the formula

$$g \circ f(x) = (2x + 1)^2 + \sin(2x + 1)$$

It should be noted that the order in which the two functions are written in the composition  $g \circ f$  is the reverse of their order of application, which is  $f$  followed by  $g$  in this composition. The notation is chosen to accord with the normal notation for function application, which reads:

$$g \circ f(x) = g(f(x))$$

An important question connected with functions is whether it is possible to ‘undo’ the changes produced by a function; that is to say, to go backwards from the value to the argument that produced it. The formal notion is that of ‘invertibility’.

Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . We say  $f$  is *invertible* if there exists a function  $g : B \rightarrow A$  such that for all  $a \in A$  and all  $b \in B$

$$f(a) = b \Leftrightarrow g(b) = a$$

In which case we call such a function  $g$  an *inverse* of  $f$ .

For example, in the case of the function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = 2x + 3$ , there is an inverse function, namely  $g : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $g(x) = (x - 3)/2$ .

In the case of a function given in the form  $y = f(x)$ , finding an inverse amounts to ‘solving’ for  $x$ . Thus, in the example above, if we express the original function  $f$  in the equational form

$$y = 2x + 3$$

then solving for  $x$  gives

$$x = (y - 3)/2$$

In other words, the inverse function is the function  $g : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $g(y) = (y - 3)/2$ . The only difference between this formulation of the definition of  $g$  and the first one is the use of  $x$  as the variable the first time,  $y$  the second time. In specifying a function, one is of course free to use any variable whatsoever, since the variable is just a kind of 'place marker' where particular arguments can be substituted in order to calculate the value. Since it is common to write real functions using  $x$  as variable, we first of all wrote the definition of  $g$  in terms of  $x$ .

Another way of defining the notion of an inverse is that  $g$  is an *inverse* of a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  iff  $g : B \rightarrow A$  and

$$g \circ f = I_A \quad \text{and} \quad f \circ g = I_B$$

where  $I_A, I_B$  are the identity functions on  $A, B$ , respectively. (The proof of this equivalent definition is left as an exercise.)

**Theorem 3.4.1** Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . Then  $f$  is invertible iff it is a bijection. Moreover, if  $f$  is invertible, its inverse function is unique.

*Proof:* Suppose  $f$  is invertible. We prove that  $f$  is a bijection. By the invertibility of  $f$ , there is an inverse function  $g : B \rightarrow A$ . To show  $f$  is one-one, let  $a_1, a_2 \in A$ ,  $a_1 \neq a_2$ . We prove that  $f(a_1) \neq f(a_2)$ . Suppose, on the contrary, that

$$f(a_1) = f(a_2) = b$$

Since  $g$  is an inverse of  $f$ , we have  $g(b) = a_1$  and  $g(b) = a_2$ . But  $g$  is a function. Hence  $a_1 = a_2$ , a contradiction. Thus  $f(a_1) \neq f(a_2)$ , and  $f$  is shown to be one-one. To show  $f$  is onto, let  $b \in B$ . We show that  $f(a) = b$  for some  $a \in A$ . Let  $a = g(b)$ . By the properties of  $g$ ,  $f(a) = f(g(b)) = b$ , so we are done. Hence  $f$  is a bijection.

Conversely, assume now that  $f$  is a bijection. We show that  $f$  is invertible. Let  $b \in B$ . Since  $f$  is onto, there is an  $a \in A$  such that  $f(a) = b$ . But  $f$  is one-one, so there cannot be another such  $a$ . Hence, for each  $b \in B$  there is exactly one  $a \in A$  with  $f(a) = b$ . So we can define a function  $g : B \rightarrow A$  by the rule: for each  $b \in B$ , let  $g(b)$  be the unique element  $a$  of  $A$  for which  $f(a) = b$ . Clearly,  $g$  is an inverse of  $f$ .

The above proof also establishes the uniqueness of the inverse, by demonstrating that for each  $b \in B$  there is exactly one possible  $a \in A$  to take for  $g(b)$ .  $\square$

The unique inverse of a bijective function  $f$  is usually denoted by  $f^{-1}$ .

## Exercises 3.4

- (1) Let
- $f: A \rightarrow B$
- ,
- $g: B \rightarrow C$
- ,
- $h: C \rightarrow D$
- . Prove that

$$h \circ (g \circ f) = (h \circ g) \circ f$$

(Associative law)

- (2) Define
- $f: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$
- by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ x - 1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Define  $g: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \\ 2x & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$$

Find formulas for the functions  $g \circ f$  and  $f \circ g$ . Use this example to show that  $g \circ f = f \circ g$  is not in general true.

- (3) Define
- $f: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$
- and
- $g: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$
- by

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 \\ g(x) &= \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ -10 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Find  $g \circ f$  and  $f \circ g$ . In each case say whether the function is one-one, onto, both, or neither, and identify the ranges of each of the functions  $f$ ,  $g$ ,  $f \circ g$ ,  $g \circ f$ .

- (4) Define  $f: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by  $f(x) = \sin x$  and  $g: \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by  $g(x) = 2x^2 + 1$ . find  $f \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$ , and identify the range in each case.
- (5) Let  $A = \{\{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{2\}, \{2, 5\}, \{3, 4, 5\}\}$ . Define  $f: A \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  by

$$f(a) = \text{the sum of the elements of } a \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

Find  $f[A]$ .Now define  $g: \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  by

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \text{the largest prime} \leq x & \text{if } x > 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

Find  $g \circ f$  and identify its range. Is  $g$  one-one? Is  $g \circ f$  one-one?

- (6) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . Prove that

$$f \circ I_A = I_B \circ f = f$$

where  $I_A, I_B$  are the identity functions on  $A, B$ , respectively.

- (7) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be invertible. Show that

$$f^{-1} \circ f = I_A \quad \text{and} \quad f \circ f^{-1} = I_B$$

- (8) Define  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ x + 1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Show that  $f$  is a bijection and find  $f^{-1}$ .

- (9) Define  $f : \mathcal{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathcal{R}^2$  by  $f(x, y) = (x + 2y, x - y)$ . Show that  $f$  is a bijection and find  $f^{-1}$ .
- (10) Suppose both  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  are invertible. Show that  $g \circ f$  is invertible and that  $(g \circ f)^{-1} = f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$ .
- (11) Let  $A$  be the set of all countries,  $B$  the set of all capital cities of the world. Define  $f : A \rightarrow B$  by

$$f(a) = \text{the capital of the country } a \quad (\forall a \in A)$$

Describe the inverse function  $f^{-1}$ .

- (12) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be invertible. Prove that

$$f^{-1}(b) = \text{the unique pre-image of } b \text{ under } f \quad (\forall b \in B)$$

- (13) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B, g : B \rightarrow C$ . Prove that:

- (a) if  $f, g$  are one-one, then  $g \circ f$  is one-one;
- (b) if  $f, g$  are onto, then  $g \circ f$  is onto;
- (c) if  $g \circ f : A \rightarrow C$  is onto, then  $f$  is onto.

- (14) Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be a bijection. Prove that  $f^{-1}$  is a bijection.

### 3.5 Denumerability

A particularly fascinating application of the abstract function concept is the way it provides us with a means of dealing with infinite sets, sets such as the set of all natural numbers or the set of all negative reals. Though our present level of abstraction might make our account seem a bit daunting to readers of this book, the basic idea is really as old as the notion of counting itself; indeed, *it is* that very notion of counting finite collections that we adopt in order to cope with infinite sets.

The fundamental notion that lies behind ‘counting’ is that of *pairing off*. Early societies, and some present-day primitive peoples, would keep a record of ‘how many’ objects of a particular kind were owned by some form of physical tokens, such as pebbles or small sticks. For each goat owned, say, the owner would have a pebble in the pile, and if asked how many goats were owned, the reply would be to point to the pile of pebbles and say “That many.” For such a simple purpose, there is no need for a universally adopted system of abstract *numbers*. It is enough that the pebbles in the pile can be paired off, one-to-one, with the goats owned. Put crudely, this form of ‘counting’ does not require *numbers*. But it does assume the notion of a one-to-one correspondence, what we would nowadays call a bijection. (Not that primitive peoples would have thought of it in this way!)

Nowadays we don’t use piles of pebbles to keep track of collections any more, or at least we don’t do so very often. We have the counting numbers — the natural numbers — which we can think of as abstract analogues of those pebbles. If we mechanically count the elements of some (finite) collection  $A$  of objects, ‘one, two, three,’ etc., what we are doing is explicitly exhibiting a one-to-one correspondence (a bijection) between a set of natural numbers and the elements of  $A$ . That is to say, we may picture the counting process as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & \dots & \dots & a_{n-1} & a_n \\ \uparrow & \uparrow & \uparrow & & & \uparrow & \uparrow \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & \dots & n-1 & n \end{array}$$

Thus,  $a_1$  is the *first* element of  $A$  (according to our count),  $a_2$  is the *second*,  $a_3$  the *third*, and so on. As the above diagram shows, this counting process determines a bijection between the set  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n-1, n\}$  and  $A$ . Since the counting process stops when we get to the number  $n$  (i.e. when we reach the  $n$ th element of  $A$ ), we say that the set  $A$  ‘has  $n$  elements’, or that ‘the number of elements of  $A$  is  $n$ ’.

So far this must all seem to be making a lot of fuss about something very familiar. So, while I am already running the risk of putting you to sleep, let me make two more very obvious observations. Firstly, the number

we reach when we count the elements in a given (finite) set does not depend on the order in which we count the elements. Secondly, given enough time we could carry out such a counting process for any finite set whatsoever.

In fact, our second observation really amounts to a definition of what it means for a set to be finite; namely a set  $A$  is finite iff the process of counting its members comes to an end. More formally, a set  $A$  is *finite* iff, for some natural number  $n$ , there is a bijection from the set  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n-1, n\}$  to  $A$ .

Now let's turn our attention from finite sets to infinite ones. As the German mathematician Georg Cantor observed at the turn of the century, the same, age-old idea of pairing off that we have just discussed can also be used to 'count' the members of an infinite set. In fact what Cantor did was take this simple idea and use it to develop an entire system of 'infinite numbers', having its own form of 'arithmetic'. We shall not delve very far into that theory here; rather we'll just look at one particular aspect that turns out to be very important in a number of branches of mathematics: the related notions of denumerability and uncountability.

An infinite set  $A$  is said to be *denumerable* if there is a bijection

$$f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow A$$

That is to say,  $A$  is denumerable iff it can be put into one-to-one correspondence with the set of all natural numbers. Let's look at a few simple examples.

- The set  $\mathcal{N}$  is itself denumerable; the identity function on  $\mathcal{N}$  is a suitable bijection.
- Let  $E$  be the set of even natural numbers. Then  $E$  is denumerable. The function  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow E$  defined by

$$f(n) = 2n$$

is a bijection. Similarly, the function  $g(n) = 2n - 1$  is a bijection from  $\mathcal{N}$  to the set of all odd natural numbers, so that set too is denumerable.

- The set  $R = \{1/n \mid n \in \mathcal{N}\}$  is denumerable. Consider the function  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow R$  defined by

$$f(n) = 1/n$$

- The set,  $\mathcal{Z}^-$  of all negative integers is denumerable. Consider the function defined on  $\mathcal{N}$  by  $f(n) = -n$ .

- The set  $\mathcal{Z}$  of all integers is denumerable. To see this, define a function  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$  by:

$$f(n) = \begin{cases} n/2 & , \text{ if } n \text{ is even} \\ -(n-1)/2 & , \text{ if } n \text{ is odd} \end{cases}$$

- The set  $P$  of all prime numbers is denumerable. To see this, we define a function  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow P$  by the following definition: let  $f(1) = 2$ , and for any  $n \geq 1$ , let  $f(n+1)$  be the least prime number bigger than  $f(n)$ . First of all you should convince yourself that this does in fact define a function. Then you should check that  $f$  is a bijection.

The following lemma generalizes this last example.

**Lemma 3.5.1** If  $A$  is any infinite set of natural numbers, then  $A$  is denumerable.

*Proof:* Define  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow A$  by letting  $f(1)$  be the smallest number in  $A$  and, for any  $n \geq 1$ ,

$$f(n+1) = \text{the smallest number in } A \text{ that is greater than } f(n).$$

As in the last example above, we have to prove that this defines a function, and that  $f$  is a bijection from  $\mathcal{N}$  to  $A$ . These are left as exercises for the reader.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.5.2** If  $T$  is denumerable and there is a bijection  $f : T \rightarrow A$  from  $T$  to some other set  $A$ , then  $A$  is denumerable.

*Proof:* Let  $h : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow T$  be a bijection. Then the composition function  $f \circ h$  is a bijection from  $\mathcal{N}$  to  $B$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.5.3** An infinite subset of a denumerable set is denumerable.

*Proof:* Let  $A$  be denumerable,  $B$  an infinite subset of  $A$ ,  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow A$  a bijection that testifies to the denumerability of  $A$ . Let

$$T = \{n \in \mathcal{N} \mid f(n) \in B\}$$

Being an infinite subset of  $\mathcal{N}$ ,  $T$  is denumerable, by Lemma 3.5.1. But clearly, the function  $f$  provides a one-to-one correspondence between  $T$  and  $B$ . So by Lemma 3.5.2,  $B$  is denumerable.  $\square$



**Lemma 3.5.4** The set  $\mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$  is denumerable.

*Proof:* The function  $f : \mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  defined by

$$f(m, n) = 2^{m-1}(2n - 1)$$

is a bijection. (Exercise: prove this fact.) Hence its inverse function  $f^{-1}$  exists and is also a bijection. This inverse function testifies to the denumerability of  $\mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$ .  $\square$

For our final result we prove that the set  $\mathcal{Q}^+$  of all positive rational numbers is denumerable. This is a somewhat surprising result, since the mental picture we have of the positive real-number line has the natural numbers spaced out at regular, discrete intervals, with infinitely many rational numbers between any pair of natural numbers — indeed, there are infinitely many rational numbers between any two rational numbers. This picture would seem quite at odds with there being a way to pair off the positive rational numbers with the natural numbers. But the world of infinite sets is full of counter-intuitive surprises of this kind.

**Lemma 3.5.5** The set  $\mathcal{Q}^+$  is denumerable.

*Proof:* Every positive rational number  $q$  can be written uniquely in the form  $m_q/n_q$  where  $m_q, n_q$  are positive integers having no common factor. Thus the function

$$f : \mathcal{Q}^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$$

defined by  $f(q) = (m_q, n_q)$  is one-one. Let  $T$  be the range of  $f$ .  $T$  is an infinite subset of  $\mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$ , so by Lemmas 3.5.4 and 3.5.3,  $T$  is denumerable. But  $f$  determines a bijection from  $\mathcal{Q}^+$  onto  $T$ , and the inverse of this bijection is a bijection from  $T$  onto  $\mathcal{Q}^+$ . Hence by Lemma 3.5.2,  $\mathcal{Q}^+$  is denumerable.  $\square$

### Exercises 3.5

- (1) Show that the set of all positive multiples of 3 is denumerable.
- (2) Show that the set  $\{n \in \mathcal{N} \mid n \geq 10\}$  is denumerable.
- (3) Show that the set  $\mathcal{N} - \{4, 5\}$  is denumerable.
- (4) Prove that if  $A$  is denumerable and  $x$  is an object not in  $A$ , then  $A \cup \{x\}$  is denumerable.

- (5) Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint denumerable sets, then  $A \cup B$  is denumerable.
- (6) Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are denumerable sets, not necessarily disjoint, then  $A \cup B$  is denumerable.
- (7) Prove that the set of *all* rationals is denumerable.
- (8) Prove that if there is a one-one function from a set  $A$  into  $\mathcal{N}$ , then  $A$  is either finite or denumerable. (The term *countable* is often used to describe a set that is either finite or denumerable.) Give an example to show that the assumption that the function be one-one cannot be omitted here.
- (9) Prove that if there is a function from  $\mathcal{N}$  onto a set  $A$ , then  $A$  is countable (i.e. either finite or denumerable).
- (10) Fill in the details in the proof of Lemma 3.5.4. In particular, prove that the function  $f$  defined there is a bijection.

## 3.6 Uncountability

*This section is considerably harder than most of the material in this book, and the reader might wish to skip it on first reading.*

In the previous section we observed that a great many infinite sets are denumerable, and the reader might have begun to wonder if it were not in fact the case that every infinite set is denumerable. Following Cantor, we show that this is not true, and indeed, the set  $\mathcal{R}$  of real numbers is not denumerable.

Since the word *countable* is used to describe a set that is either finite or denumerable, an *uncountable* set is one that is infinite and non-denumerable. Thus Cantor's result shows that the set of reals is uncountable.

Before we start the proof, I should stress that although the argument is fairly short, it has considerable logical sophistication, and it may take the reader some considerable time, and several re-readings of the proof, in order to understand what is going on, and why the argument does in fact prove the theorem. After I have finished giving the formal proof, I shall try to provide some explanation to help clarify the reasoning.

**Theorem 3.6.1 (Cantor)** The set  $\mathcal{R}$  is non-denumerable.

*Proof:* Suppose, on the contrary, that  $\mathcal{R}$  were denumerable. Then by Lemma 3.5.3, the unit interval  $(0, 1]$  would be denumerable. Let  $f : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow (0, 1]$  be a bijection that testifies this fact.

Now, each number in  $(0, 1]$  can be represented in a unique way as a non-terminating decimal (i.e. a decimal that has infinitely many non-zero entries). For each natural number  $n$ , denote the decimal representation of the number  $f(n)$  by:

$$f(n) = 0.d_1^n d_2^n d_3^n \dots d_i^n \dots$$

Thus  $d_i^n$  denotes the digit in the  $i$ th decimal place in the decimal representation of  $f(n)$  as a non-terminating decimal.

We now specify a new number  $r$ . We specify  $r$  by giving its decimal expansion; that is to say, we describe a rule that determines the decimal expansion of  $r$ . The number  $r$  has the decimal representation

$$r = 0.r_1 r_2 r_3 \dots r_i \dots$$

where for every index  $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots$  we define

$$r_i = \begin{cases} 1 & , \text{ if } d_i^i \neq 1 \\ 2 & , \text{ if } d_i^i = 1 \end{cases}$$

This clearly specifies a real number in the unit interval  $(0, 1]$ .

Now, since  $f$  is onto  $(0, 1]$ , there must be some natural number  $k$  such that  $r = f(k)$ . In particular,  $r$  and  $f(k)$  must have the same decimal representation; that is to say, it must be the case that for every index  $i$ ,

$$r_i = d_i^k$$

In particular, this must hold for the index  $i = k$ , that is to say:

$$r_k = d_k^k$$

But by definition of  $r$ , if  $d_k^k = 1$  then  $r_k = 2$  and if  $d_k^k \neq 1$  then  $r_k = 1$ . Hence in any event

$$r_k \neq d_k^k$$

This contradiction proves the theorem.  $\square$

The argument presented above is generally referred to as Cantor's *diagonal argument*. To see how this name originates, suppose we present the proof as follows. Assuming that the real interval  $(0, 1]$  is denumerable, we can list all the members of this interval as  $f(1), f(2), f(3), \dots$ . Now let's

write out the decimal representations of these numbers in a regular way, namely:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 f(1) & = & 0. \ d_1^1 \ d_2^1 \ d_3^1 \ d_4^1 \ d_5^1 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(2) & = & 0. \ d_1^2 \ d_2^2 \ d_3^2 \ d_4^2 \ d_5^2 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(3) & = & 0. \ d_1^3 \ d_2^3 \ d_3^3 \ d_4^3 \ d_5^3 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(4) & = & 0. \ d_1^4 \ d_2^4 \ d_3^4 \ d_4^4 \ d_5^4 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(5) & = & 0. \ d_1^5 \ d_2^5 \ d_3^5 \ d_4^5 \ d_5^5 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 & \vdots & \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots
 \end{array}$$

Remember that this list is, following to our initial assumption, a listing of *all* the reals in the interval  $(0, 1]$ . Thus, if we can define a real number  $r$  that lies between 0 and 1 but is not equal to any member of this list, we shall have a contradiction, and this will demonstrate that the original assumption is false, that is to say, the set  $\mathcal{R}$  must in fact be non-denumerable. The way we obtain such a number  $r$  is by specifying its decimal expansion. And we do this by working our way down the main *diagonal* of the above array, as follows.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 f(1) & = & 0. \ \boxed{d_1^1} \ d_2^1 \ d_3^1 \ d_4^1 \ d_5^1 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(2) & = & 0. \ d_1^2 \ \boxed{d_2^2} \ d_3^2 \ d_4^2 \ d_5^2 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(3) & = & 0. \ d_1^3 \ d_2^3 \ \boxed{d_3^3} \ d_4^3 \ d_5^3 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(4) & = & 0. \ d_1^4 \ d_2^4 \ d_3^4 \ \boxed{d_4^4} \ d_5^4 \ \dots \ \dots \\
 f(5) & = & 0. \ d_1^5 \ d_2^5 \ d_3^5 \ d_4^5 \ \boxed{d_5^5} \ \dots \ \dots \\
 & \vdots & \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots
 \end{array}$$

To determine the first decimal digit of  $r$ , we look at the first digit in the diagonal,  $d_1^1$ . If this digit is a 1, we let the first digit of  $r$  be 2; if the first diagonal digit is not 1, we let the first digit of  $r$  be 1. Thus, however we specify the remainder of the decimal expansion of  $r$ , we have ensured that  $r$  cannot be equal to  $f(1)$ , since  $r$  and  $f(1)$  differ in the first decimal place.

To specify the second decimal digit of  $r$ , we look at the second entry in the diagonal, the digit  $d_2^2$ . The same way as before, we define the second digit of  $r$  to be different from the second digit of  $f(2)$ , so that now, however we define the remainder of the expansion of  $r$ ,  $r$  will not be equal to  $f(2)$ .

And so on. At stage  $i$  in this definition, we make sure that the  $i$ th decimal digit of  $r$  is different from  $d_i^i$ , the  $i$ th decimal digit of  $f(i)$ .

Thus for every index  $i$ ,  $r$  cannot be equal to  $f(i)$ , since  $r$  and  $f(i)$  have different entries in the  $i$ th decimal place.

Cantor's theorem tells us that there are at least two different 'sizes' of infinite sets, the denumerable and the non-denumerable. In fact, by generalizing the Cantor diagonalization argument, it is possible to show, as Cantor himself did, that there is in fact an entire infinite progression of increasing infinities. But for the bulk of mathematics, it is the countable versus uncountable distinction that is important. So in this book we shall simply take a brief look at the world of uncountable sets in so far as they compare in size to the set of reals.

Two sets  $A, B$  are said to be *equipollent* iff there is a bijection  $f : A \rightarrow B$ . Clearly, in the case of finite sets,  $A$  and  $B$  will be equipollent iff they have the same number of elements. (Exercise: prove this fact.) And by definition, an infinite set  $A$  will be denumerable iff it is equipollent to the set  $\mathcal{N}$ . That leaves the issue of infinite sets equipollent to  $\mathcal{R}$ . Any such set is very definitely 'bigger' (in an infinite sense) than the sets  $\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{Q}$ . We give a couple of simple but important examples.

- The unit interval  $(0, 1)$  is equipollent to the entire real line  $\mathcal{R}$ . To see this, consider the bijection  $f : (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by

$$f(x) = \tan(\pi x - \pi/2)$$

(Exercise: sketch the graph of this function to see how it works here.)

- Any two non-empty real intervals  $(a, b)$ ,  $(c, d)$  are equipollent. Take the bijection  $f : (a, b) \rightarrow (c, d)$  defined by

$$f(x) = \frac{d-c}{b-a}x + \frac{bc-ad}{b-a}$$

### Exercises 3.6

- (1) Let  $B$  be the set of all infinite binary sequences (i.e. all infinite sequences of 0's and 1's). Prove that  $B$  is uncountable.
- (2) Prove that if  $A$  is uncountable and  $B$  is a countable subset of  $A$ , then  $A - B$  is uncountable. (It is in fact equipollent to  $A$ , though you are not being asked to prove this additional fact.)
- (3) Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint sets equipollent to  $\mathcal{R}$ , then  $A \cup B$  is equipollent to  $\mathcal{R}$ . (The conclusion is in fact valid even without the assumption of disjointness.)

- (4) Prove that the set of irrational numbers is uncountable. (It is in fact equipollent to  $\mathcal{R}$ , though you are not being asked to prove this.)

## CHAPTER 4

# Relations

### 4.1 Binary relations

The notion of a *binary relation* (which we shall refer to simply as a *relation* for most of this chapter) is one that will be familiar to you. Given sets  $A$  and  $B$ , a *relation between  $A$  and  $B$*  links certain elements of  $A$  with certain elements of  $B$ .

For example, if  $A$  is the set of all people and  $B$  is the set of all objects, then *ownership* is a relation between  $A$  and  $B$ . In this case, a person  $p$  is related to an object  $a$  iff  $p$  owns  $a$ .

Again, if  $U$  is a universal set and  $A$  is a collection of subsets of  $U$ , the membership relation  $\in$  is a relation between  $U$  and  $A$ .

In mathematical discussions we generally refer to a relation between the sets  $A$  and  $B$  in terms of the Cartesian product, namely as a relation *on  $A \times B$* . The reasons for this nomenclature will become clear in due course. In the meantime, just put it down to the usual eccentricities of mathematicians.

Most of the examples of relations that arise in mathematics (and many of the relations that arise in everyday life) are relations that connect elements of the same set; that is to say, they are relations on  $A \times A$  for the appropriate set  $A$ . We refer to such relations simply as relations *on  $A$* .

For example,  $<$ ,  $\leq$ ,  $=$  are all relations on the set  $\mathcal{N}$  of natural numbers. In the case of the ‘less-than relation’  $<$ , given any pair  $m, n$  of natural numbers, either it is the case that  $m < n$  or else it is not the case that  $m < n$ . In case  $m < n$  we say that  $m, n$  are ‘related’ by the less-than relation, or that they ‘satisfy’ this relation; in this case the proposition  $m < n$  expresses a certain *relationship* between  $m$  and  $n$ , namely that  $m$  is *less than  $n$* . Likewise for the relations  $\leq$  and  $=$ .

For another example, if  $A$  is any collection of sets,  $\subseteq$  is a relation on  $A$ . Given two sets  $X, Y$  in  $A$ , either  $X \subseteq Y$  or else  $X \not\subseteq Y$ .

Again, the relation of *disjointness* on  $A$ : two sets  $X, Y$  are *disjoint* iff

$X \cap Y = \emptyset$ . There is no standard symbol for this relation as there is for the preceding examples. Usually one just writes  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$  or  $X \cap Y \neq \emptyset$ . But this is still a *relationship* between two sets; the role played by the empty set is purely to express the way the two sets are or are not related, namely by having no/some elements in common.

Finally, if  $P$  is the set of all people, there is the relationship of marriage. Certain pairs of people are married and other pairs are not married.

Though the concept of a relation is certainly one you have met many times, both in mathematics and in your everyday activities, what you might well find novel is to regard relations as mathematical *objects* of study in their own right, rather than as ‘concepts that relate’ the objects under study.

In order to carry out a systematic study of relations, we introduce a little terminology and some notational conventions.

If  $R$  is a relation on  $A \times B$ , we call the set  $A$  the *domain* of  $R$  and  $B$  the *codomain* of  $R$ .

In the case where  $R$  is a relation for which the domain and codomain are the same set  $A$ , that set  $A$  is called the *underlying set* for  $R$ .

In mathematical studies, in order to specify a relation, the domain and codomain (or the underlying set where appropriate) must be specified.

This implies, for example, that there is not one less-than relation but several, one on  $\mathcal{N}$ , one on  $\mathcal{Z}$ , one on  $\mathcal{Q}$ , one on  $\mathcal{R}$ , one on the set of primes, one on the set of all irrational numbers, etc. Of course, there is a sense in which these are all ‘the same’ relation: the relation of one number being *less than* another. But for the purposes of the kind of study we wish (and need) to make here, it is important that we distinguish between all of these different instances of the ‘less-than’ relationship that arise by taking different underlying sets. The reason for being specific about underlying sets will become clear in the next section when we examine the distinctions that can be made between different types of relations.

In general discussions of relations, we often use the letters  $R, S$  to denote arbitrary relations. In keeping with the common notation adopted for relations such as  $<, \leq, =$ , we use what is known as *infix* notation, whereby the proposition that the elements  $a, b$  of the domain and codomain satisfy the relation  $R$  is written in the form

$$aRb$$

Alternative notations that are possible include  $Rab$  (*prefix* notation),  $abR$  (*postfix* notation), and  $R(a, b)$ .

Here are some further examples of relations:

- $R$  on  $\mathcal{N}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m > 10n$  ;



- $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m + n$  is even;
- $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m - n$  is even;
- $E$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by:  $xEy$  iff  $y = e^x$  ;
- $R$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by  $xRy$  iff  $xy \geq 0$  ;
- $S$  on the set,  $T$ , of all triangles in the plane defined by  $t_1St_2$  iff  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  are similar;
- $\perp$  (perpendicularity) on the set,  $L$ , of all straight lines in the plane;
- $R$  with domain  $\mathcal{R}$  and codomain the set,  $P$ , of all real polynomials in one unknown, defined by  $aRp$  iff  $a$  is a root of  $p$  ;
- $R$  on the set  $P \times L$ , where  $P$  is the set of all points in the plane,  $L$  is the set of all straight lines in the plane, and  $pRl$  means that the point  $p$  lies on the line  $l$  ;
- $P$  on the set,  $A$ , of all people, where  $xPy$  means  $x$  is a parent of  $y$  ;
- $S$  on the set of all Americans where  $aSb$  means  $a$  is a sibling of  $b$  ;
- $B$  on the set of all Americans where  $aBb$  means  $a$  is a brother of  $b$  ;
- $R$  on the set  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by  $xRy$  iff  $(x < 0)$  or  $(x \geq 0 \wedge x = y)$  .

### Exercises 4.1

- (1) Of the examples of relations given in the chapter so far, which ones differentiate between the order of the objects related, and for which ones is the order of the elements unimportant? (This question is only relevant to relations where the domain and codomain are the same.)
- (2) For each of the examples given so far, which ones relate objects to themselves and which do not? (Again this only applies to relations where the domain equals the codomain.)
- (3) Give five further examples of relations where the domain and codomain are different.
- (4) Give ten further examples of relations where the domain and codomain are the same, five where the underlying set is mathematical, five where the underlying set is a set of people.

## 4.2 Properties of relations

From now on, unless specified otherwise, we restrict our attention to relations where the domain and codomain are equal.

Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$ . We say  $R$  is *reflexive* iff

$$(\forall a \in A)[aRa]$$

For example, the relation  $\leq$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  is reflexive: for every real  $x$ , it is the case that  $x \leq x$ . On the other hand, the relation  $<$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  is not reflexive. Indeed, for *no* real  $x$  is it the case that  $x < x$ . This is far more than is required for reflexivity to fail. Since reflexivity is defined using a universal quantifier, it only requires one counter-example in order for reflexivity to fail.

For example, consider the relation  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by

$$xRy \text{ iff } xy > 0$$

For most reals  $x$ ,  $x^2 > 0$ , so  $xRx$ . In fact there is only one real  $x$  for which this fails, and that is 0. But because  $\neg(0R0)$ , this relation is not reflexive. If we change the underlying set from  $\mathcal{R}$  to the set of all non-zero reals, then the resulting relation *is* reflexive.

This last example provides an indication of the importance of stipulating the underlying set of a relation.

We say a relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is *symmetric* iff

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[aRb \Rightarrow bRa]$$

Notice that this definition immediately implies a ‘stronger’ form of itself where  $\Rightarrow$  is replaced by  $\Leftrightarrow$ . Thus what symmetry says is that the order of the elements is not important as far as the relation is concerned.

For example, the relation  $R$  on  $\mathcal{N}$  defined by

$$mRn \text{ iff } m - n \text{ is even}$$

is symmetric: for any two natural numbers  $m, n$ , if  $m - n$  is even then  $n - m$  is even, i.e.  $mRn$  implies  $nRm$ .

On the other hand, the relation  $<$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  is not symmetric. Indeed, there are *no* pairs  $m, n$  of integers such that both  $m < n$  and  $n < m$ , so certainly it is not the case that

$$(\forall m, n \in \mathcal{Z})[m < n \Rightarrow n < m]$$

Notice once again that in order for symmetry to fail it is enough for there to be just one pair of elements of the underlying set for which the symmetry property fails.

For example, define a relation  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  by:

$$xRy \text{ iff } (x = 0 \wedge y = 1) \vee (x \neq 0 \wedge x = y)$$

Then (and you should check this for yourself) we have  $[xRy \Rightarrow yRx]$  for all pairs  $x, y$  of reals except  $x = 0, y = 1$ . The existence of this one counter-example is enough to make  $R$  non-symmetric. If we change the underlying set to be the set of all non-zero reals, then the resulting relation is symmetric.

A relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is said to be *transitive* iff

$$(\forall a, b, c \in A)[aRb \wedge bRc \Rightarrow aRc]$$

For example, the relation  $<$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  is transitive: if  $x < y$  and  $y < z$ , then  $x < z$ .

The relation  $\perp$  of perpendicularity on the set,  $L$ , of straight lines in the plane is not transitive. Indeed, if  $p \perp q$  and  $q \perp r$ , then  $r$  and  $p$  must be parallel, so the transitivity condition fails in all possible cases.

Once again this kind of failure is extreme; a single counter-example is enough to cause failure. For example, define a relation  $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  by

$$xRy \text{ iff } (x = 0 \wedge y = 1) \vee (x = 1 \vee y = 0) \vee (x \neq 0 \wedge x \neq 1 \wedge x = y)$$

Then we have  $xRy \wedge yRz \Rightarrow xRz$  for all values of  $x, y, z$  except those involving 0 or 1. It is left as an exercise for you, the reader, to figure out exactly what happens when one or more of  $x, y, z$  is equal to 0 or 1.

### Exercises 4.2

For each of the following relations, say which of the properties of reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity are satisfied and which fail.

- (1)  $<$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$ .
- (2)  $\leq$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$ .
- (3)  $=$  on  $\mathcal{R}$ .
- (4)  $\subseteq$  on the collection,  $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{N})$ , of all subsets of  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (5)  $\subset$  on the collection,  $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{N})$ , of all subsets of  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (6) Disjointness on  $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{N})$ .
- (7)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{N}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m > 10n$ .
- (8)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m + n$  is even.
- (9)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  defined by:  $mRn$  iff  $m - n$  is even.

- (10)  $E$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by:  $xEy$  iff  $y = e^x$ .
- (11)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by  $xRy$  iff  $xy \geq 0$ .
- (12)  $S$  on the set,  $T$ , of all triangles in the plane defined by  $t_1St_2$  iff  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  are similar.
- (13)  $\perp$  (perpendicularity) on the set,  $L$ , of all straight lines in the plane.
- (14)  $R$  with domain  $\mathcal{R}$  and codomain the set,  $P$ , of all real polynomials in one unknown, defined by  $aRp$  iff  $a$  is a root of  $p$ .
- (15)  $R$  on the set  $P \times L$ , where  $P$  is the set of all points in the plane,  $L$  is the set of all straight lines in the plane, and  $pRl$  means that the point  $p$  lies on the line  $l$ .
- (16)  $P$  on the set,  $A$ , of all people, where  $xPy$  means  $x$  is a parent of  $y$ .
- (17)  $S$  on the set of all Americans where  $aSb$  means  $a$  is a sibling of  $b$ .
- (18)  $B$  on the set of all Americans where  $aBb$  means  $a$  is a brother of  $b$ .
- (19)  $R$  on the set  $\mathcal{R}$  defined by  $xRy$  iff  $(x < 0)$  or  $(x \geq 0 \wedge x = y)$ .

### 4.3 Relations as sets of ordered pairs

Though we have tried to regard relations as mathematical *objects* in their own right, they have been somewhat tenuous 'objects', plucked from our intuitions of 'properties'. Most people find a degree of tension in the use of the word 'thing' in the phrase 'a relation is a thing that links objects together'.

In mathematics, it is common to objectify abstractions of this sort by means of a formal mathematical definition of a *model*. The model that is usually taken for a relation is as a set of ordered pairs. If  $R$  is a relation between the two sets  $A$  and  $B$ , we model  $R$  by means of the set:

$$\hat{R} = \{(a, b) \in A \times B \mid aRb\}$$

Thus for any elements  $a \in A, b \in B$ ,

$$aRb \text{ iff } (a, b) \in \hat{R}$$

Thus the question as to whether or not  $aRb$  for a given pair  $a, b$  can be replaced by the set-membership question as to whether or not  $(a, b) \in \hat{R}$ .

Now there are a great many questions one can ask about relations. Is it a relation used by people, and if so what kind of people use it? Is it a legal

relation, and if so under what legal system? Is it a purely mathematical relation, and if so who invented it? And so on. But for most mathematical applications, none of these questions is important. In mathematics, the only question of significance as far as relations are concerned is: which pairs of elements satisfy the relation and which do not? But this is precisely the question that can be answered in straight set-theoretic terms by looking at the model set  $\hat{R}$

In other words, as far as mathematics is concerned, all that you need is the set  $\hat{R}$  of those pairs of objects that are linked by the relation  $R$ . In other words, you don't need *relations* at all, it is enough to have the corresponding *sets*.

Accordingly, it is common in mathematics to 'forget' altogether that relations are *relations*, but to think of them as sets of ordered pairs. That is to say, we refer to the model sets  $\hat{R}$  as a 'relations' and forget about  $R$  altogether. This gives us the following alternative definition:

A *relation* between a set  $A$  and a set  $B$  is a subset of the Cartesian product  $A \times B$ .

In particular, a relation on a set  $A$  is a subset of  $A \times A$ .

Having made the switch from real relations to their set-theoretic counterparts, we now have no further need for the notation  $\hat{R}$ , of course. We can just speak about 'the relation  $R$ ', it now being understood that  $R$  will be a set of ordered pairs here.

In terms of our new definition, the properties of reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity for a relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  now read as follows:

- $R$  is reflexive iff

$$(\forall a \in A)[(a, a) \in R]$$

- $R$  is symmetric iff

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[(a, b) \in R \Rightarrow (b, a) \in R]$$

- $R$  is transitive iff

$$(\forall a, b, c \in A)[((a, b) \in R \wedge (b, c) \in R) \Rightarrow ((a, c) \in R)]$$

At least, this is the new 'official' way of writing these definitions. In practice, we continue to use our previous, less cumbersome infix notation, the only difference being that this is now just an abbreviation. That is to say, we agree to write  $aRb$  in place of  $(a, b) \in R$ .

This takes us back to our starting point, except that now we no longer have to accept relations as some kind of strange ‘objects’; they are just subsets of Cartesian products.

In fact we now have far more freedom than before in constructing relations. According to our new definition, *any* subset of  $A \times B$  will be a relation between  $A$  and  $B$ , regardless of whether or not there is some nice way to describe this relation.

For example, we may define a relation by simply listing the ordered pairs it contains, such as the relation  $R$  between the sets  $\{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$  and  $\{2, 4, 6, 8\}$  defined by:

$$R = \{(1, 2), (3, 2), (9, 2), (3, 6), (3, 8), (7, 2), (7, 4), (7, 6), (7, 8)\}$$

This issue is taken up again in the exercises for this section.

It should be noted that the above procedure of replacing a rather abstract notion by a formal mathematical model is a common one in mathematics. In fact we already met this device in Chapter 1, when we replaced the complex notion of implication by the formally defined (material) conditional  $\Rightarrow$ . Just as the conditional captures something, but not everything, about implication, so too our definition of a relation as a set of ordered pairs captures something, but not everything, about real relations.

Thus, our (new) definition of, say, the relation of marriage as being simply the set

$$\{(a, b) \mid a \text{ is married to } b\}$$

certainly does not capture everything about the relationship of marriage; but it does capture enough for our present, mathematical purposes.

### Exercises 4.3

From now on, we always assume that a relation is a set of ordered pairs.

- (1) Let  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ . Define (by explicitly writing down the set of ordered pairs) a relation on  $A$  that is:
  - (a) reflexive, not symmetric, not transitive;
  - (b) not reflexive, symmetric, not transitive;
  - (c) not reflexive, not symmetric, transitive;
  - (d) not reflexive, symmetric, transitive;
  - (e) reflexive, not symmetric, transitive;
  - (f) reflexive, symmetric, not transitive;

- (g) not reflexive, not symmetric, not transitive;  
 (h) reflexive, symmetric, transitive.
- (2) Which of the properties reflexive, symmetric, transitive do the following relations satisfy?
- (a)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$  defined by
- $$(x, y)R(z, w) \text{ iff } x + z \leq y + w$$
- (b)  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$  defined by
- $$(x, y)R(z, w) \text{ iff } x + y \leq z + w$$
- (3) Let  $R$  be a relation on  $A$  such that  $(\forall a \in A)(\exists b \in A)[aRb]$ . Show that if  $R$  is symmetric and transitive, then  $R$  is reflexive.
- (4) Is it true that if  $R$  and  $S$  are relations on  $A \times B$ , then  $R \cup S$  and  $R \cap S$  are relations on  $A \times B$ ? Justify your answer.
- (5) Which of the following, if any, are true? (Justify your answer in each case.)
- (a) If  $R, S$  are reflexive relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cup S$  is a reflexive relation on  $A$ .  
 (b) If  $R, S$  are reflexive relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cap S$  is a reflexive relation on  $A$ .  
 (c) If  $R, S$  are symmetric relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cup S$  is a symmetric relation on  $A$ .  
 (d) If  $R, S$  are symmetric relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cap S$  is a symmetric relation on  $A$ .  
 (e) If  $R, S$  are transitive relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cup S$  is a transitive relation on  $A$ .  
 (f) If  $R, S$  are transitive relations on  $A$ , then  $R \cap S$  is a transitive relation on  $A$ .
- (6) A relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is said to be *asymmetric* iff

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[aRb \Rightarrow \neg(bRa)]$$

and is said to be *antisymmetric* if

$$(\forall a, b \in A)[(aRb \wedge bRa) \Rightarrow (a = b)]$$

Prove that if  $R$  is asymmetric, then it is antisymmetric. What can you say about the converse?

- (7) A relation on  $A$  that is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive is called a *partial order* on  $A$ . Prove that each of the ‘ordering relations’  $<$  and  $\leq$  are partial orders on  $\mathcal{R}$  and that  $\subset$  and  $\subseteq$  are partial orderings on  $\mathcal{P}(X)$  for any set  $X$ .

## 4.4 Relations as graphs

There are two notions of ‘graph’ in mathematics, so it is best to be sure at the outset which notion is being referred to by the word here.

By a *graph* we mean a set  $V$ , whose elements will be referred to as the *vertices* (of the graph), together with a collection of *edges* that connect certain pairs of vertices. It is possible to have an edge that runs from a vertex to itself. The set of vertices may be finite or infinite.

If each edge of the graph has a designated direction, the graph is said to be a *directed graph* (or sometimes more simply a *digraph*). It is possible for an edge in a digraph to be assigned both directions.

For example, Figure 4.1 presents a (finite) directed graph whose vertex-set  $V$  is the set  $\{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h\}$ . In this directed graph,  $a$  is connected to  $b$ ,  $b$  to  $c$ ,  $a$  to  $c$ ,  $c$  to  $a$ ,  $c$  to itself, and so on.

Directed graphs provide a convenient way to illustrate relations, at least relations defined on a small, finite set of elements. This is somewhat analogous to the use of Venn diagrams to illustrate set-theoretic configurations. If  $R$  is a relation on a set  $A$ , we can represent  $R$  as a digraph that has  $A$  as vertex set and has an edge  $a \longrightarrow b$  for each pair  $a, b$  from  $A$  such that  $aRb$ .

Figure 4.1 represents the relation on the set

$$A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h\}$$

whose ordered pair representation is:

$$R = \{(a, b), (b, c), (a, c), (c, a), (c, c), (d, d), (e, d), \\ (e, g), (g, e), (g, f), (f, h), (g, h)\}$$

Figure 4.2 indicates the graph-theoretic properties that correspond to the reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity of relations. A reflexive relation is one whose digraph has the property that every vertex has a loop attached to it, as in Figure 4.2 (i). A symmetric relation is one whose digraph is such that every edge is directed both ways, as in Figure 4.2 (ii). A transitive relation is one in which every time there is a pair of directed edges  $a \longrightarrow b$



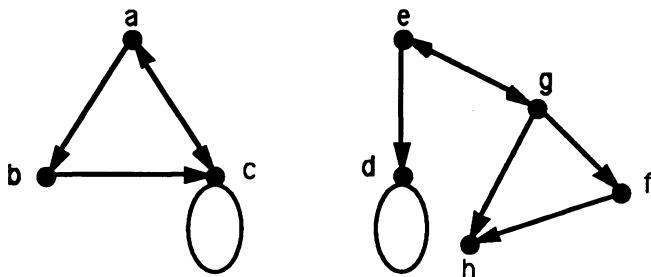


Figure 4.1: A directed graph

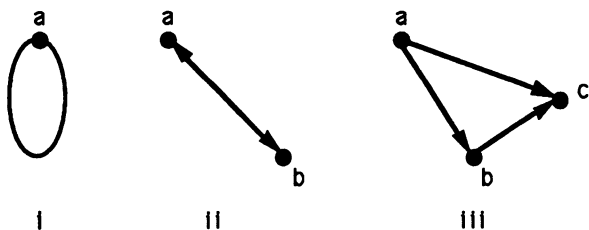


Figure 4.2: Reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity

and  $b \rightarrow c$ , then there is an edge  $a \rightarrow c$  that completes the triangle, as in Figure 4.2 (iii).

We refer to the above properties of digraphs as *reflexivity*, *symmetry*, and *transitivity*, respectively.

## 4.5 Equivalence relations

A relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is said to be an *equivalence relation* if it is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.

For example, each of the following is an equivalence relation:

- $=$  (equality) on any set  $A$ ;
- $R$  defined on  $\mathbb{Z}$  by  $mRn$  iff  $m - n$  is even;

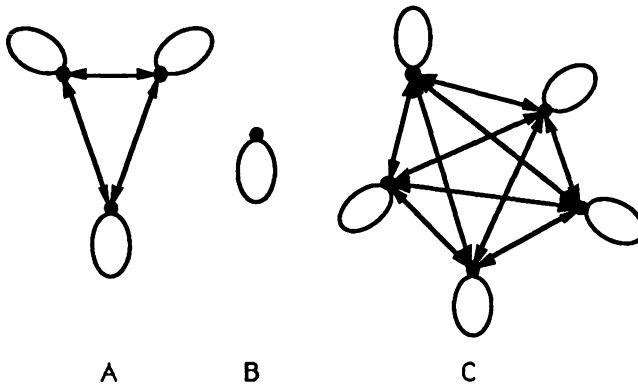


Figure 4.3: Graph of an equivalence relation

- $R$  defined on  $\mathcal{N}$  by  $(m, n)R(p, q)$  iff  $mq = np$ .

The proof that each of these is an equivalence relation is left to the reader. In each case there are three conditions to verify, of course.

In the case of an equivalence relation, the associated digraph exhibits a very special form, illustrated by Figure 4.3. Namely, the graph divides up into distinct subgraphs, each of which is a reflexive, symmetric, transitive graph in which every pair of vertices is joined by an edge, and no two of which subgraphs are joined by any edge. In the example illustrated, these subgraphs are labelled A, B, C.

If  $R$  is an equivalence relation on a set  $A$ , then for any  $a \in A$  we define the *equivalence class* of  $a$  (*modulo*  $R$ ) to be the set:

$$[a] = \{x \in A \mid aRx\}$$

For example, let  $R$  be the equivalence relation defined on the set  $\mathcal{N}$  of natural numbers by  $mRn$  iff  $m - n$  is even. Then, for instance

$$[1] = \{n \mid mRn\} = \{n \mid 1 - n \text{ is even}\} = \{n \mid n \text{ is odd}\}$$

and

$$[2] = \{n \mid mRn\} = \{n \mid 2 - n \text{ is even}\} = \{n \mid n \text{ is even}\}$$

Continuing in this manner, we see that:

$$[1] = [3] = [5] = [7] = \dots = \text{the odd numbers}$$

$$[2] = [4] = [6] = [8] = \dots = \text{the even numbers.}$$

Thus in this case there are just two equivalence classes, the set of even numbers and the set of odd numbers. The equivalence class of any odd number is the set of all odd numbers, and the equivalence class of any even number is the set of all even numbers. In particular, this particular equivalence relation splits the underlying set  $\mathcal{N}$  into two disjoint parts.

The following theorem shows that this is just a special case of a quite general phenomenon.

**Theorem 4.5.1** Let  $R$  be an equivalence relation on a set  $A$ .

- (i) For any  $a \in A$ ,  $a \in [a]$ .
- (ii) For any  $a, b \in A$ ,  $aRb$  iff  $[a] = [b]$ .
- (iii) For any  $a, b \in A$ , if  $\neg(aRb)$  then  $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$ .
- (iv) Any two equivalence classes are either equal or disjoint.

*Proof:* (i) Since  $R$  is reflexive,  $aRa$ , so

$$a \in \{x \in A \mid aRx\} = [a]$$

(ii) Assume  $[a] = [b]$ . By (i),  $b \in [b]$ . Thus  $b \in [a]$ . That is:

$$b \in \{x \in A \mid aRx\}$$

Thus  $aRb$ .

Conversely, assume  $aRb$ . We prove that  $[a] = [b]$ . Let  $x \in [a]$  be arbitrary. Then by definition,  $aRx$ . Now by symmetry, our assumption gives  $bRa$ . Since  $bRa$  and  $aRx$ , transitivity gives  $bRx$ . Thus  $x \in [b]$ . Now suppose  $x \in [b]$ . Then by definition,  $bRx$ . Thus we have  $aRb$  and  $bRx$ , so by transitivity,  $aRx$ , giving  $x \in [a]$ . The proof of (ii) is complete.

(iii) We prove the (logically equivalent) contrapositive, namely that if  $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$  then  $aRb$ . Let  $x \in [a] \cap [b]$ . Since  $x \in [a]$ ,  $aRx$ . Since  $x \in [b]$ ,  $bRx$ , so by symmetry,  $xRb$ . Then  $aRx$  and  $xRb$ , so by transitivity,  $aRb$ .

(iv) For any pair  $a, b \in A$ , either  $aRb$  or  $\neg(aRb)$ . If  $aRb$  then by (ii),  $[a] = [b]$ . If  $\neg(aRb)$ , then by (iii),  $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$ .  $\square$

By a *partition* of a set  $A$  we mean a collection  $\mathcal{F}$  of pairwise disjoint subsets of  $A$  (i.e.  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$  for every distinct pair of sets  $X, Y$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ ) whose union is the whole of  $A$ , i.e.

$$A = \bigcup \mathcal{F}$$

For example, if  $P$  is the set of all prime numbers,  $Q$  is the set of all composite numbers, and  $R = \{1\}$ , then the collection  $\{P, Q, R\}$  is a partition of  $\mathcal{N}$ .

Theorem 4.5.1 tells us that for any equivalence relation on a set  $A$ , the collection of all equivalence classes constitutes a partition of  $A$ . By part (i) of the theorem,  $A$  is equal to the union of all the equivalence classes. And by part (iv), the equivalence classes are pairwise disjoint.

This result has a converse, namely:

**Theorem 4.5.2** Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be a partition of a set  $A$ . Define a relation  $R$  on  $A$  by

$$aRb \text{ iff } (\exists X \in \mathcal{F})[a, b \in X]$$

Then  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $A$ . Moreover, the equivalence classes for  $R$  are precisely the sets in the partition  $\mathcal{F}$ .

*Proof:* Left as an exercise.  $\square$

The above observations tell us that equivalence relations are just a particular way of looking at an extremely familiar phenomenon: that of classification or categorization.

In many walks of life, as well as in mathematics, we frequently classify objects according to some criterion of ‘equivalence’. For instance, given a ranking of football teams or chess players, we often split them into *leagues* or *divisions* according to ability and performance. The ‘equivalence relation’ involved here is one of ‘equivalent (or comparable) ability’ and the equivalence classes are the different leagues or divisions.

Again, a number of US publishers produce annual listings of American colleges ranked according to their degree of entrance selectivity. The ‘equivalence relation’ here is one of ‘having roughly the same overall entrance requirements’; the equivalence classes are the groupings of colleges into categories (generally) known as ‘most competitive’, ‘highly competitive’, ‘very competitive’, ‘competitive’, ‘less competitive’, and ‘non-competitive’. A potential student who is told that two particular colleges are equally difficult to get into ( $aRb$ ) will know that they are in the same category ( $[a] = [b]$ ); conversely, knowing that two colleges are both, say, ranked ‘highly competitive,’ ( $a, b$  in the same partition class) a potential student will know that they are equally hard to get into ( $aRb$ ).

The exercises below give some more mathematical examples of equivalence classes, and should provide some indication of the importance of this concept in modern mathematics.

### Exercises 4.5

- (1) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{N}$  by  $mRn$  iff 3 divides  $m - n$ .

- (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{N}$ .
  - (b) What are  $[1]$ ,  $[2]$ ,  $[3]$ ?
  - (c) What are  $[4]$ ,  $[5]$ ,  $[6]$ ?
  - (d) How many equivalence classes are there altogether? Prove your answer.
- (2) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{N}$  by  $mRn$  iff 3 divides  $m + n$ . Prove that  $R$  is not an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (3) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R}$  by:  $xRy$  iff  $x^2 = y^2$ .
- (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{R}$ .
  - (b) What are  $[0]$ ,  $[2]$ ,  $[49]$ ?
  - (c) Prove that there are infinitely many equivalence classes.
- (4) Fix an integer  $p \geq 1$ , and define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{Z}$  by:  $mRn$  iff  $p$  divides  $m - n$ .
- (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{Z}$ .
  - (b) What are  $[0]$ ,  $[1]$ ,  $[-1]$ ,  $[p]$ ,  $[-p]$ ,  $[p + 1]$ ?
  - (c) Prove that  $[0]$ ,  $[1]$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $[p - 1]$  are all distinct equivalence classes.
  - (d) Prove that  $[0]$ ,  $[1]$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $[p - 1]$  are *all* the equivalence classes.
- (5) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$  by

$$(m, n)R(p, q) \text{ iff } mq = np$$

- (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N}$ .
  - (b) Give three members of each of the equivalence classes
- $$[(1, 1)], [(1, 2)], [(2, 5)]$$
- (c) Give a complete description of the set  $[(p, q)]$  for any pair  $p, q$  from  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (6) Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the collection of all finite sets. Define  $\approx$  on  $\mathcal{F}$  by:

$$X \approx Y \text{ iff there is a bijection } f : X \rightarrow Y$$

- (a) Prove that  $\approx$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{F}$ .
- (b) What are the equivalence classes of the sets  $\emptyset$ ,  $\{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ ?
- (c) What is the equivalence class of the set  $\{a_1, \dots, a_n\}$  for any distinct objects  $a_1, \dots, a_n$ ?

- (d) Show that there is a bijection from  $\mathcal{N}$  onto the collection,  $\mathcal{C}$ , of all equivalence classes.
- (e) Can you suggest a possible *formal definition* of the integers 0, 1, 2, ... ?

The relation  $\approx$  is known as *equipollence*. For a generalization to infinite sets, see Sections 3.5 and 3.6.

- (7) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$  by:  $(x, y)R(u, v)$  iff  $3x - y = 3u - v$ .
  - (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$ .
  - (b) What are  $[(4, 5)]$ ,  $[(0, 0)]$  ?
  - (c) Describe  $[(a, b)]$  for any fixed values of  $a, b$ , both in set-theoretic terms and geometrically.
- (8) Define  $R$  on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$  by  $(x, y)R(u, v)$  iff  $x^2 + y^2 = u^2 + v^2$ .
  - (a) Prove that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$ .
  - (b) What are  $[(0, 0)]$ ,  $[(1, 1)]$ ,  $[(3, 4)]$  ?
  - (c) Describe  $[(a, b)]$  for any fixed values of  $a, b$ , both in set-theoretic terms and geometrically.
- (9) Prove Theorem 4.5.2.
- (10) Describe the equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{Z}$  determined by the partition  $\{A, B\}$ , where  $A = \{x \mid x \leq 0\}$ ,  $B = \{x \mid x > 0\}$ .
- (11) Describe, as sets of ordered pairs, the equivalence relations on the set  $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$  associated with the following partitions:
  - (a)  $\{\{1, 2\}, \{3, 4, 5\}\}$
  - (b)  $\{\{1\}, \{2\}, \{3, 4, 5\}\}$
  - (c)  $\{\{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \{5\}\}$

## 4.6 Functions as relations

In Chapter 3, we adopted a definition of a function that concentrated on the transformation process from argument to value, rather than the particular rule used to specify that process. A direct consequence of this approach is that we may regard any function as a simple set of ordered pairs, the pairs that link arguments with their corresponding values.

More precisely, given a function  $f : A \rightarrow B$ , we can identify  $f$  with the set

$$\hat{f} = \{(a, b) \in A \times B \mid f(a) = b\}$$

The characteristic property of any function is that for any argument there is exactly one value associated with that argument. In terms of the set  $\hat{f}$ , this says

$$(\forall a \in A)(\exists! b \in B)[(a, b) \in \hat{f}]$$

We may thus *define* a function  $f$  from a domain  $A$  to a codomain  $B$  to be a subset of  $A \times B$  such that

$$(*) \quad (\forall a \in A)(\exists! b \in B)[(a, b) \in f]$$

Many authors do in fact use this as their basic definition of function. Though a convenient device for the mathematician, this is, however, somewhat misleading. Functions are not sets of ordered pairs, any more than relations are sets of ordered pairs. Functions are functions and relations are relations. What certainly is the case is that functions may be *modeled* as sets of ordered pairs, just as relations may be so modeled. The difference between the set-theoretic model of a function and that of a relation is that the function must satisfy the additional requirement (\*).

In the sense of these common mathematical modeling devices then, we may speak of a *function* from a set  $A$  to a set  $B$  as 'being' a *relation*  $f$  on  $A \times B$  that satisfies the condition (\*).

For example, the function  $f : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$  can be defined to be the relation

$$\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = x^2\}$$

### Exercises 4.6

- (1) Which of the following relations are functions and which are not. For those that are functions, indicate the domain and a possible codomain.

(a)  $R = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (2, 4), (3, 4), (4, 5), (5, 5)\}$

(b)  $R = \{(1, 2), (2, 1)\}$

(c)  $R = \{(x, y) \mid x \in \mathcal{R}, y \in \mathcal{R}, x = \sin y\}$

(d)  $R = \{(m, n) \in \mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N} \mid m^2 = n\}$

(e)  $R = \{(m, n) \in \mathcal{Z} \times \mathcal{Z} \mid m^2 = n\}$

(f)  $R = \{(m, n) \in \mathcal{N} \times \mathcal{N} \mid n^2 = m\}$

(g)  $R = \{(m, n) \in \mathcal{Z} \times \mathcal{Z} \mid n^2 = m\}$

(2) Give the domain and range for each of the following functions.

- (a)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = x^2 - 5\}$
- (b)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = \tan x\}$
- (c)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = 1/(x - 1)\}$
- (d)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = \chi_{\mathcal{N}}(x)\}$
- (e)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = 0\}$
- (f)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = \sqrt{x^2}\}$

(3) Prove that the following relations are not functions on  $\mathcal{R}$ .

- (a)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid x^2 = y^2\}$
- (b)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid x^2 + y^2 = 4\}$
- (c)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid x = \sin y\}$
- (d)  $\{(x, y) \in \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R} \mid y = \sqrt{x}\}$

(4) Let  $f \subseteq A \times B$  and  $g \subseteq C \times D$  be functions. Prove that  $f \cap g$  is a function from  $A \cap C$  to  $C \cap D$ .

(5) Let  $f \subseteq A \times B$  and  $g \subseteq C \times D$  be functions. Show that if  $A \cap C = \emptyset$ , then  $f \cup g$  is a function from  $A \cup C$  to  $B \cup D$ .

Give an example to show that the assumption  $A \cap C = \emptyset$  here is essential.

(6) Regarding the bijection  $f : A \rightarrow B$  as a subset of  $A \times B$ , write down the definition of  $f^{-1}$ .

(7) Regarding the function  $f : A \rightarrow B$  as a subset of  $A \times B$ , write down the definitions of  $f$  being (a) one-one, and (b) onto.

(8) Regarding the functions  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  as subsets of  $A \times B$  and  $B \times C$ , respectively, write down the definition of the composition function  $g \circ f$  as a set of ordered pairs.

## 4.7 An example: the reals

In this book we assume that you already have a reasonable idea of the concept of a real number. But why do we need to introduce the real number system in the first place? In real life, we are never able to measure any quantity (e.g. length or temperature) to more than a few decimal places, for which the rational numbers suffice. Indeed, the rational numbers suffice for the measurement of any quantity to whatever degree of accuracy is required. This fact is illustrated by the following simple result:



**Theorem 4.7.1** If  $r, s$  are rationals,  $r < s$ , then there is a rational  $t$  such that  $r < t < s$ .

*Proof:* Let

$$t = \frac{1}{2}(r + s)$$

Clearly,  $r < t < s$ . But is  $t \in \mathcal{Q}$ ? Well, letting  $r = m/n$ ,  $s = p/q$ , where  $m, n, p, q \in \mathcal{Z}$ , we have

$$t = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{m}{n} + \frac{p}{q}\right) = \frac{mq + np}{2nq}$$

so as  $mq + np, 2nq \in \mathcal{Z}$ , we conclude that  $t \in \mathcal{Q}$ .  $\square$

The above property of there being a third rational between any two unequal rationals is known as *density*.

The trouble is, although the rationals are 'dense' (in the above sense), there are nevertheless 'holes' in the rational line. For example, if we let

$$A = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid x > 0 \wedge x^2 < 2\}$$

$$B = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid x > 0 \wedge x^2 \geq 2\}$$

then every element of  $A$  is smaller than every element of  $B$ , and

$$A \cup B = \mathcal{Q}$$

But  $A$  has no greatest member and  $B$  has no smallest member (as the reader can easily check), so there is a sort of 'hole' between  $A$  and  $B$ . This is the 'hole' where  $\sqrt{2}$  'ought' to be, of course. The fact that  $\mathcal{Q}$  contains 'holes' of this nature makes it unsuitable for some mathematical purposes, even though it suffices for all our measurements. Indeed, a number system in which the equation

$$x^2 - 2 = 0$$

has no solution is a pretty weak one.

So suppose we have agreed that for mathematics we require a number system which does not contain such 'holes' and in which we can take square roots, etc. (at least for positive numbers). How do we go about finding such a system? Or, to put the question another way (since everyone reading this book will know about the real number system), what exactly *are* the real numbers?

If we ask what the rationals are, we can answer by referring back to the integers, since all rationals are essentially quotients of integers. (More specifically, they can be defined as equivalence classes of pairs of integers.

See Exercise 4.5 (4) to get some indication of the general idea.) Since the integers are so basic, for most purposes this suffices as an answer.

But when the same question is asked of the reals the answer is not so easy. The point is, although the rationals are an abstract system of entities, and thus nothing more than figments of our intuition, they correspond to such basic concepts that they possess a certain concreteness. (We can calculate a number to 30 decimal places, even 50, and to get all the rationals we just need to imagine that we could calculate to *any* finite number of places, which does not require too great a feat of imagination.) But the concept of an irrational number is already much more abstract. As we proved in Chapter 1, it is utterly impossible to express  $\sqrt{2}$  as a quotient of two integers; the decimal expansion of  $\sqrt{2}$  continues for ever without recurrence. So in what sense are we justified in regarding, say,  $\sqrt{2}$  as a number at all? The answer is, only in a strict mathematical sense. One constructs the real number line by an abstract mathematical construction which, essentially, 'fills in all the holes' in  $\mathcal{Q}$ .

This construction is quite complicated, and was one of the major mathematical accomplishments of the 19th century. It only answers the question 'what is a real number?' in an abstract, mathematical sense. Its value is that it does tell us that we are not going to run into any trouble if we imagine that the 'holes' in  $\mathcal{Q}$  are all filled in. And the advantage of filling in the holes is that the mathematical possibilities multiply enormously. (For instance, the calculus cannot easily be developed over  $\mathcal{Q}$ , but it can over  $\mathcal{R}$ .)

For our present purposes, we shall take as a sort of 'definition' of a real number the points on the real line. This is, of course, a circular 'definition', and hence no definition at all, but it does provide us with a useful and intuitive starting point.

The set of reals (i.e. the points on the real line) is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}$ . The elements of  $\mathcal{R}$  possess a natural ordering ( $<$ ) which corresponds to the 'ordering' of the points on the real line.

The fact that the real line has no 'holes' is expressed by the so-called *completeness property*, described below.

## 4.8 Upper bounds. Completeness

Let  $A \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ . Any real  $x$  such that

$$(\forall a \in A)(a \leq x)$$

is called an *upper bound* of  $A$ . We call  $x$  a *least upper bound* (abbreviated *lub*) if there is no smaller upper bound: that is to say, whenever  $y < x$ ,  $y$

fails to be an upper bound of  $A$ . Clearly then,  $x$  is a least upper bound of  $A$  iff:

- $(\forall a \in A)(a \leq x)$ ; and
- whenever  $y < x$  there is an  $a \in A$  such that  $a > y$ .

A set  $A$  of real numbers does not have to have any upper bound. For instance, the set  $\mathcal{N} \subseteq \mathcal{R}$  has no upper bound. But the completeness property for the real line says that if  $A$  does have an upper bound, it will necessarily have a least one.

*Completeness property*

Let  $A \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ ,  $A \neq \emptyset$ . If  $A$  has an upper bound, then it has a least upper bound (in  $\mathcal{R}$ ).

If  $A$  has a least upper bound, this must be unique. For if  $x$  and  $y$  were two distinct least upper bounds, one would have to be smaller than the other, say  $x < y$ , and then  $y$  would not be a *least* upper bound.

The rational line,  $\mathcal{Q}$ , does not have the completeness property. For instance, the set

$$A = \{r \in \mathcal{Q} \mid r^2 < 2\}$$

is bounded above in  $\mathcal{Q}$  by 2. But it has no least upper bound in  $\mathcal{Q}$ . To see this, let  $x \in \mathcal{Q}$  be any upper bound of  $A$ . We show that there is a smaller one (in  $\mathcal{Q}$ ).

Let  $x = p/q$ , where  $p, q \in \mathcal{N}$ .

Suppose first that  $x^2 < 2$ . Thus  $2q^2 > p^2$ . Now, as  $n$  gets large, the expression  $n^2/(2n+1)$  increases without bound, so we can pick  $n \in \mathcal{N}$  so large that

$$\frac{n^2}{2n+1} > \frac{p^2}{2q^2 - p^2}$$

Rearranging, this gives

$$2n^2q^2 > (n+1)^2p^2$$

Hence

$$\left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)^2 \frac{p^2}{q^2} < 2$$

Let

$$y = \left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right) \frac{p}{q}$$

Thus  $y^2 < 2$ . Now, since  $(n+1)/n > 1$ , we have  $x < y$ . But  $y$  is rational and we have just seen that  $y^2 < 2$ , so  $y \in A$ . This contradicts the fact that  $x$  is an upper bound for  $A$ .

It follows that we must have  $x^2 \geq 2$ . Since there is no rational whose square is equal to 2, this means that  $x^2 > 2$ . Thus  $p^2 > 2q^2$ , and we can pick  $n \in \mathcal{N}$  so large now that

$$\frac{n^2}{2n+1} > \frac{2q^2}{p^2 - 2q^2}$$

which becomes, upon rearranging,

$$p^2 n^2 > 2q^2(n+1)^2$$

i.e.

$$\frac{p^2}{q^2} \left( \frac{n}{n+1} \right)^2 > 2$$

Let

$$y = \left( \frac{n}{n+1} \right) \frac{p}{q}$$

Then  $y^2 > 2$ . Since  $n/(n+1) < 1$ ,  $y < x$ . But for any  $a \in A$ ,  $a^2 < 2 < y^2$ , so  $a < y$ . Thus  $y$  is an upper bound of  $A$  less than  $x$ , as we set out to prove.

On the other hand, the set  $A$  (regarded as a subset of  $\mathcal{R}$  now) does have a least upper bound in  $\mathcal{R}$  namely  $\sqrt{2}$ .

### Exercises 4.8

- (1) Let  $A \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ ,  $x \in \mathcal{R}$ . Show that  $x$  is the lub of  $A$  iff:
  - (a)  $(\forall a \in A)(a \leq x)$ ; and
  - (b)  $(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists a \in A)(a > x - \epsilon)$ .
- (2) By negating (a) and (b) above, obtain a symbolic definition of the property ' $x$  is not the lub of  $A$ '. (Put your answer in a positive form.)
- (3) What is  $\text{lub}(a, b)$ ? What is  $\text{lub}[a, b]$ ? What is  $\max(a, b)$ ? What is  $\max[a, b]$ ?
- (4) Let  $A = \{|x - y| \mid x, y \in (a, b)\}$ . Prove that  $A$  has an upper bound. What is  $\text{lub } A$ ?
- (5) In addition to the completeness property, the *Archimedean property* is an important fundamental property of  $\mathcal{R}$ . What this says is that if  $x, y \in \mathcal{R}$  and  $x, y > 0$ , there is an  $n \in \mathcal{N}$  such that  $nx > y$ .  
Use the Archimedean property to show that if  $r, s \in \mathcal{R}$  and  $r < s$ , there is a  $q \in \mathcal{Q}$  such that  $r < q < s$ . (Hint: pick  $n \in \mathcal{N}$ ,  $n > 1/(s-r)$ , and find an  $m \in \mathcal{N}$  such that  $r < (m/n) < s$ .)

- (6) (a) Define the notions *lower bound*, *greatest lower bound (glb)* of a set  $A \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ .
- (b) Give a characterization of the glb of a set  $A$  analogous to the one for lub given at the start of this section.
- (c) Prove that the Completeness Property is equivalent to the following proposition: if a set  $A \subseteq \mathcal{R}$  has a lower bound, it has a greatest lower bound.
- (d) Let  $A = \{r \in \mathcal{Q} \mid r > 0 \wedge r^2 > 3\}$ . Show that  $A$  has a lower bound in  $\mathcal{Q}$  but no greatest lower bound in  $\mathcal{Q}$ .

## 4.9 Sequences

Suppose we associate with each natural number  $n$  a real number  $a_n$ . The set of all these numbers  $a_n$ , arranged according to the index  $n$ , is called a *sequence*. We denote this sequence by

$$\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$$

Thus, the symbol  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  represents the sequence

$$a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n, \dots$$

For example, the members of  $\mathcal{N}$  themselves constitute a sequence when assigned their usual order

$$1, 2, 3, \dots, n, \dots$$

This sequence would be denoted by  $\{n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  (because  $a_n = n$  for each  $n$ ).

Or we could order the elements of  $\mathcal{N}$  in a different manner to obtain the sequence

$$2, 1, 4, 3, 6, 5, 8, 7, \dots$$

This is quite a different sequence from the sequence  $\{n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ , since the ordering in which the members of the sequence appear is important. Or, if we allow repetitions we get a completely new sequence

$$1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 8, \dots$$

(There does not need to be a nice rule involved: it may be impossible to find a formula to describe  $a_n$  in terms of  $n$ .)

Again, we can have a constant sequence

$$\{\pi\}_{n=1}^{\infty} = \pi, \pi, \pi, \pi, \pi, \dots, \pi, \dots$$

or an alternating (in sign) sequence

$$\{(-1)^{n+1}\}_{n=1}^{\infty} = +1, -1, +1, -1, +1, -1, \dots$$

In short, there is no restriction on what the members of a sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  may be, except that they be real numbers.

Now, some sequences have a rather special property. As we go along the sequence, the numbers in the sequence get arbitrarily closer and closer to some fixed number; for instance the members of the sequence

$$\left\{\frac{1}{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty} = 1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}, \dots, \frac{1}{n}, \dots$$

get arbitrarily closer and closer to 0 as  $n$  gets larger, and the members of the sequence

$$\left\{1 + \frac{1}{2^n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty} = 1\frac{1}{2}, 1\frac{1}{4}, 1\frac{1}{8}, 1\frac{1}{16}, \dots$$

get arbitrarily closer and closer to 1. Again, the members of the sequence

$$3, 3.1, 3.14, 3.141, 3.1415, 3.14159, 3.141592, 3.1415926, \dots$$

get arbitrarily closer and closer to  $\pi$ , though this example is not as good as some of the others, since we have not given a general rule for the  $n$ th term in the sequence.

If the members of the sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  get arbitrarily closer and closer to some fixed number  $a$  in this manner, we say that the sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  *tends to the limit*  $a$ , and write

$$a_n \rightarrow a \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

So far, this is all very intuitive. Let us see if we can obtain a precise definition of what it means to say ' $a_n \rightarrow a$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ '.

Well, to say that  $a_n$  gets arbitrarily closer and closer to  $a$  is to say that the difference  $|a_n - a|$  gets arbitrarily closer and closer to 0. This is the same as saying that whenever  $\epsilon$  is a positive real number, the difference  $|a_n - a|$  is eventually less than  $\epsilon$ . This leads to the following formal definition:

$$a_n \rightarrow a \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \text{ iff}$$

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \geq n)(|a_m - a| < \epsilon)$$

This looks quite complicated. Let us try to analyse it. Consider the part

$$(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \geq n)(|a_m - a| < \epsilon)$$

This says that there is an  $n$  such that for all  $m$  greater than or equal to  $n$ , the distance from  $a_m$  to  $a$  is less than  $\epsilon$ . In other words, there is an  $n$  such that all terms in the sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  beyond  $a_n$  lie within the distance  $\epsilon$  of  $a$ . We can express this concisely by saying that the terms in the sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  are eventually all within the distance  $\epsilon$  from  $a$ .

Thus, the statement

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \geq n)(|a_m - a| < \epsilon)$$

says that for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , the members of the sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  are eventually all within the distance  $\epsilon$  from  $a$ . This is the formal definition of the intuitive notion of ' $a_n$  gets arbitrarily closer and closer to  $a$ '.

Let us consider a numerical example. Consider the sequence  $\{1/n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ . We 'know' that  $1/n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . We shall see how the formal definition works for this sequence. We must prove that

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \geq n)(|\frac{1}{m} - 0| < \epsilon)$$

This simplifies at once to

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0)(\exists n \in \mathcal{N})(\forall m \geq n)(\frac{1}{m} < \epsilon)$$

To prove that this is a true assertion, let  $\epsilon > 0$  be arbitrary. We must find an  $n$  such that

$$m \geq n \Rightarrow \frac{1}{m} < \epsilon$$

Pick  $n$  large enough so that  $n > 1/\epsilon$ . (This uses the Archimedean property of  $\mathcal{R}$  discussed in Exercises 4.8.) If now  $m \geq n$  then

$$\frac{1}{m} \leq \frac{1}{n} < \epsilon$$

In other words,

$$(\forall m \geq n)(\frac{1}{m} < \epsilon)$$

as required.

One point to notice here is that our choice of  $n$  depended upon the value of  $\epsilon$ . The smaller  $\epsilon$  is, the greater our  $n$  needs to be.

Another example is the sequence  $\{n/(n+1)\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ , i.e.

$$\frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{4}{5}, \dots$$

We prove that  $n/(n+1) \rightarrow 1$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Let  $\epsilon > 0$  be given. We must find an  $n \in \mathcal{N}$  such that for all  $m \geq n$

$$\left| \frac{m}{m+1} - 1 \right| < \epsilon$$

Pick  $n$  so large that  $n > 1/\epsilon$ . Then, for  $m \geq n$ ,

$$\left| \frac{m}{m+1} - 1 \right| = \left| \frac{-1}{m+1} \right| = \frac{1}{m+1} < \frac{1}{m} \leq \frac{1}{n} < \epsilon$$

as required.

### Exercises 4.9

- (1) Formulate both in symbols and in words what it means to say that  $a_n \not\rightarrow a$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (2) Prove that  $(n/(n+1))^2 \rightarrow 1$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (3) Prove that  $1/n^2 \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (4) Prove that  $1/2^n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (5) We say a sequence  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  *tends to infinity* if, as  $n$  increases,  $a_n$  increases without bound. For instance, the sequence  $\{n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  tends to infinity, as does the sequence  $\{2^n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ . Formulate a precise definition of this notion, and prove that both of these examples fulfil the definition.
- (6) Let  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  be an increasing sequence (i.e.  $a_n < a_{n+1}$  for each  $n$ ). Suppose that  $a_n \rightarrow a$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Prove that  $a = \text{lub}\{a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ .
- (7) Prove that if  $\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  is increasing and bounded above, then it tends to a limit.



## CHAPTER 5

# Complex numbers

### 5.1 Complex numbers

There are various ways to define complex numbers. We present one of the most common approaches.

We start with the real number system,  $\mathcal{R}$ . From  $\mathcal{R}$ , we may construct the Cartesian product  $\mathcal{R}^2 = \mathcal{R} \times \mathcal{R}$ , the set of all ordered pairs  $(x, y)$  where  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers.

We then *define* a complex number to be any element of  $\mathcal{R}^2$ .

Our next task is to define the operations of addition and multiplication of complex numbers.

If  $(a, b)$ ,  $(c, d)$  are complex numbers, we define the *sum*

$$(a, b) + (c, d)$$

to be the complex number

$$(a + c, b + d)$$

It is easy to prove that addition of complex numbers, so defined, is both commutative and associative. Moreover, the complex number  $(0, 0)$  acts as an additive identity, that is to say,

$$(a, b) + (0, 0) = (a, b)$$

for all complex numbers  $(a, b)$ . And the complex number  $(-a, -b)$  is the additive inverse of  $(a, b)$ :

$$(a, b) + (-a, -b) = (0, 0)$$

The *product* of the complex numbers  $(a, b)$ ,  $(c, d)$  is defined thus:

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (ac - bd, ad + bc)$$

The reason for choosing this odd looking definition, rather than, say, the 'obvious' definition

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (ac, bd)$$

will become clear later.

It is a routine matter to verify that multiplication of complex numbers is commutative and associative, and that the distributive law holds for multiplication and addition, that is

$$z(u + v) = zu + zv$$

for any complex numbers  $z, u, v$ . Moreover, the complex number  $(1, 0)$  acts as a multiplicative identity, and

$$(a, b)(0, 0) = (0, 0)$$

for all complex numbers  $(a, b)$ . We prove later that division of complex numbers is always possible, except for division by zero, i.e. by  $(0, 0)$ .

## 5.2 The complex plane

Having now defined the complex number system, can we obtain some sort of intuitive picture of this system? For instance, although the real number system is, as you now know, a highly abstract and complicated mathematical structure, we nonetheless have the comforting picture of the real line, a continuous straight line stretching out to infinity in both directions.

Well, it turns out that whereas we need a considerable amount of effort in order to relate this simple picture of the reals to the complicated mathematical objects that are taken to be the real numbers, our definition of the complex numbers itself provides a simple visual interpretation, namely the two-dimensional plane  $\mathcal{R}^2$ . Instead of a straight line as we have for  $\mathcal{R}$ , we have a plane, stretching out to infinity in all directions.

When we think of the plane  $\mathcal{R}^2$  in this manner, we generally refer to it as the *complex plane*.

One point to notice is that, whereas the real numbers have a natural ordering (they lie on a line!), the same is not true of the complex numbers. There is no natural notion of 'less than' for complex numbers.

If  $(a, b)$  is a complex number, we refer to the real number  $a$  as the *real part* of  $(a, b)$  and to the real number  $b$  as the *imaginary part* of  $(a, b)$ .

The use of the words 'real' and 'imaginary' in this context is not intended to convey any deep meaning, rather it is due to the way complex numbers were developed historically. The real part of a complex number  $z$  is denoted

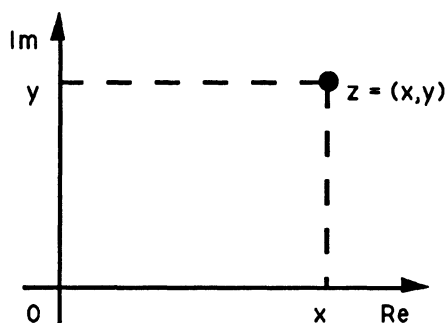


Figure 5.1: The complex plane

by  $\text{Re}(z)$ , the imaginary part by  $\text{Im}(z)$ . Notice that both  $\text{Re}(z)$  and  $\text{Im}(z)$  are real numbers. In the complex plane, the  $x$ -axis is referred to as the *real axis*, the  $y$ -axis being the *imaginary axis* (see Figure 5.1).

Having now defined the complex numbers, in what sense is this system an extension of the reals? According to our definition, no real number is a complex number, since all complex numbers are *ordered pairs* of real numbers. However, with number systems it does not matter exactly *what* a number is, it is the behavior of the entire system that counts. We shall see that this observation allows us to *regard* the complex numbers as an extension of the reals.

Consider the complex numbers of the form  $(x, 0)$ . If we add two of these numbers we obtain another such number:

$$(x, 0) + (y, 0) = (x + y, 0)$$

And multiplication is also simple in this case:

$$(x, 0)(y, 0) = (xy, 0)$$

Indeed, as we can now see, the operations of complex addition and complex multiplication on the complex numbers of the form  $(x, 0)$  reduce to the operations of real addition and real multiplication on the first coordinates; the second coordinate, being zero, plays no role at all. Hence, the subsystem of the complex numbers consisting of just those numbers of the form  $(x, 0)$  is a thinly disguised version of the real number system. (In formal mathematical jargon, we say that the above subsystem of the complex numbers is *isomorphic* to the real number system.) So, when we consider complex

numbers, we may as well regard a complex number  $(x, 0)$  as the same as the real number  $x$ . That is, there is no point in distinguishing between  $(x, 0)$  and  $x$ ; we could just write  $x$  instead. In this way we may regard a real number as being just a special kind of complex number, one whose imaginary part is zero. In the complex plane, the 'real line' is then just the real axis (the axis marked 'Re' in Figure 5.1).

Notice that as a result of our above discussion, if  $x$  is a 'real number' and  $(a, b)$  is a complex number, then

$$x.(a, b) = (x, 0)(a, b) = (xa - 0b, xb + 0a) = (xa, xb)$$

so the product  $x.(a, b)$  is the complex number  $(xa, xb)$ .

### 5.3 The complex number $i$

We have already investigated complex numbers of the form  $(x, 0)$ . What about those of the form  $(0, y)$ ? Such a number is said to be a (*pure*) *imaginary number*.

Any imaginary number can be expressed as a product of a real number and the particular imaginary number  $(0, 1)$ , namely

$$(0, y) = y(0, 1)$$

Now, the imaginary number  $(0, 1)$  has the remarkable property that squaring gives

$$(0, 1)^2 = (0, 1)(0, 1) = (0 \times 0 - 1 \times 1, 0 \times 1 + 1 \times 0) = (-1, 0)$$

which can be written as

$$(0, 1)^2 = -1$$

since we have agreed to 'identify' a complex number of the form  $(-1, 0)$  with the real number  $-1$ . Thus,  $(0, 1)$  is a square root of  $-1$ .

Denoting the number  $(0, 1)$  by  $i$ , we can now obtain a convenient alternative notation for complex numbers. For if  $(x, y)$  is any complex number, then

$$(x, y) = (x, 0) + (0, y) = (x, 0) + y(0, 1) = x + yi$$

Thus we may express complex numbers in the form

$$x + yi$$

where  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers.

Convenient though it is, you should however be very careful when using this notation. The symbol  $+$  here refers throughout to *complex addition*. There is no intention that the real numbers  $x$  and  $y$  should be added in the sense of adding real numbers.

One thing the  $x + yi$  notation does do is make sense of our definition of complex multiplication. For we can now see that it is essentially a result of ordinary algebra. Given complex numbers  $a + bi$  and  $c + di$ , we have, by ordinary algebra,

$$(a + bi)(c + di) = a(c + di) + bi(c + di) = ac + adi + bci + bdi^2$$

But  $i^2 = -1$ . Hence

$$(a + bi)(c + di) = ac + adi + bci - bd = (ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i$$

Translation of this equality back into the ordered pair notation yields our original definition

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (ac - bd, ad + bc)$$

In terms of the  $x + yi$  notation, complex addition becomes:

$$(a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$$

Note also that if  $z, w$  are complex numbers, then

$$z = w \quad \text{iff} \quad [\text{Re}(z) = \text{Re}(w) \text{ and } \text{Im}(z) = \text{Im}(w)]$$

This last fact is extremely useful in calculations with complex numbers. For example, suppose we wish to find the square roots of the complex number  $3 + 4i$ . We begin by letting  $x + yi$  be a square root of  $3 + 4i$ . Thus

$$(x + yi)^2 = 3 + 4i$$

Expanding the left-hand side we get

$$x^2 + 2xyi + y^2i^2 = 3 + 4i$$

Noting that  $i^2 = -1$ , this becomes

$$(x^2 - y^2) + 2xyi = 3 + 4i$$

Equating real and imaginary parts we obtain the equations

$$x^2 - y^2 = 3, \quad 2xy = 4$$

Eliminating  $y$  we get

$$x^2 - (2/x)^2 = 3$$

i.e.

$$x^4 - 3x^2 - 4 = 0$$

This factorises to give

$$(x^2 - 4)(x^2 + 1) = 0$$

Since  $x$  is real,  $x^2 + 1 \neq 0$ . Hence

$$x^2 - 4 = 0$$

Thus  $x = \pm 2$ . So, using the equation

$$y = \frac{2}{x}$$

we obtain the solutions  $x = 2$ ,  $y = 1$  and  $x = -2$ ,  $y = -1$ . Thus the required square roots are

$$\pm(2 + i)$$

This answer may be checked by direct evaluation:

$$(2 + i)^2 = 4 + 4i + i^2 = 4 + 4i - 1 = 3 + 4i$$

### Exercises 5.3

(1) Evaluate:

(a)  $(2 + 3i) + (6 + 5i)$ ,  $3(1 + i) - \frac{1}{4}(9 - 2i)$  ;

(b)  $(3 + i)(9 - 6i)$ ,  $(1 + i)i$  ;

(c)  $i^3$ ,  $i^6$ ,  $(1 - i)^2$  .

(2) Find the complex square roots of:

$$i, \quad -3 + 4i, \quad 1 + (4\sqrt{3})i$$

(3) Which complex number is both real and imaginary?

(4) On the complex plane, plot the numbers 1,  $-1$ ,  $i$ ,  $-i$  and the square roots of  $i$ .

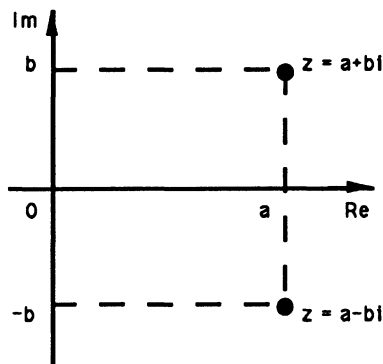


Figure 5.2: Complex conjugates

## 5.4 Conjugacy and division

If  $z = a + bi$  is a complex number, the *complex conjugate* of  $z$  is defined to be the complex number

$$\bar{z} = a - bi$$

The relationship between  $z$  and  $\bar{z}$  is illustrated in Figure 5.2.

One reason for introducing the complex conjugate lies in the fact that it enables us to show that division by complex numbers is possible. For let  $z = a + bi$  be any non-zero complex number. Then

$$z\bar{z} = (a + bi)(a - bi) = a^2 - b^2i^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

which is real. Hence

$$z \left[ \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2} \bar{z} \right] = 1$$

In other words, the multiplicative inverse of  $z$  exists and is

$$\frac{\bar{z}}{(a^2 + b^2)}$$

This enables us to divide by (non-zero) complex numbers. For example, suppose we wish to divide  $1 + i$  by  $3 + 4i$ . We commence by multiplying both numerator and denominator by  $\overline{3 + 4i}$ , thus:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1+i}{3+4i} &= \frac{1+i}{3+4i} \frac{3-4i}{3-4i} = \frac{(1+i)(3-4i)}{(3+4i)(3-4i)} = \frac{3-4i+3i-4i^2}{9-16i^2} \\ &= \frac{7-i}{9+16} = \frac{7-i}{25} = \frac{7}{25} - \frac{1}{25}i \end{aligned}$$

We may check this by multiplying the answer by  $3 + 4i$ :

$$\begin{aligned}(3 + 4i) \left( \frac{7}{25} - \frac{1}{25}i \right) &= \frac{21}{25} - \frac{3}{25}i + \frac{28}{25}i - \frac{4}{25}i^2 \\ &= \frac{21}{25} + \frac{4}{25} + \frac{25}{25}i \\ &= 1 + i\end{aligned}$$

### Exercises 5.4

- (1) Evaluate:  $1/(1 + i)$ ,  $1/(3 - i)$ ,  $(1 + i)/(1 - i)$ ,  $6/(5 + 2i)$ ,  $1/i$ ,  $i/(2 + 5i)$ ,  $(1 + 3i)/(2 - i)^2$ .
- (2) Prove that a complex number  $z$  is real iff  $z = \bar{z}$ .
- (3) Prove that  $\overline{1/z} = 1/\bar{z}$  for any non-zero complex number  $z$ .
- (4) Prove that  $\overline{zw} = \bar{z}\bar{w}$  for any complex numbers  $z, w$ .
- (5) Prove that  $\overline{z + w} = \bar{z} + \bar{w}$  for any complex numbers  $z, w$ .
- (6) What is  $\bar{\bar{z}}$ ?
- (7) Prove that  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = \frac{1}{2}(z + \bar{z})$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = \frac{1}{2i}(z - \bar{z})$ .
- (8) Prove that  $\bar{z}w + z\bar{w}$  is always real. (Hint: prove that  $\bar{z}w + z\bar{w} = 2\operatorname{Re}(z\bar{w})$ .)
- (9) Prove that  $\bar{z}w - z\bar{w}$  is always imaginary.
- (10) Define  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  by

$$f(z) = \bar{z}$$

Is  $f$  a bijection? If so, what is  $f^{-1}$ ?

## 5.5 Polar representation

Since complex numbers are essentially just the points in the complex plane, any coordinate system for  $\mathcal{R}^2$  will suffice to determine a particular complex number. Using polar coordinates we are able to obtain a representation of complex numbers which is particularly well suited to complex multiplication, an operation which hitherto has appeared somewhat 'complex' in the everyday sense of this word!



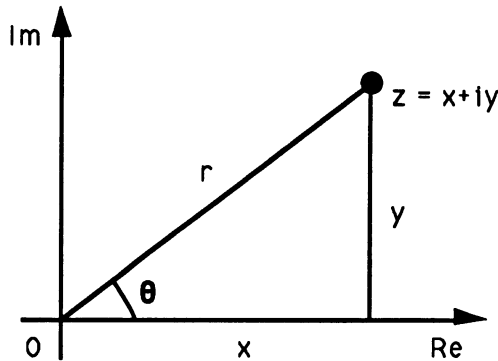


Figure 5.3: Polar representation of complex numbers

In order to specify the complex number  $z = x + yi$  (Figure 5.3), we need only give the distance  $r$  from the point  $z$  to the origin and the angle  $\theta$  made by the line  $0z$  and the real axis. We call the pair  $(r, \theta)$  the *polar coordinates* of the point  $z$  in the complex plane. The angle  $\theta$  is measured in a counterclockwise direction from the real axis, and is subject to the constraint

$$0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$$

(It is usual to express  $\theta$  in radians in this context.) The number  $r$  will be a non-negative real number, but is otherwise unrestricted.

The relationship between polar coordinates and Cartesian coordinates is expressed by the equations

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \operatorname{Re}(z) = r \cos \theta \\ y &= \operatorname{Im}(z) = r \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$z = x + iy = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)$$

We often use  $\operatorname{cis} \theta$  to abbreviate the expression  $\cos \theta + i \sin \theta$ . Thus

$$z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$$

This is the *polar representation* of  $z$ . The angle  $\theta$  is called the *argument* of  $z$ , denoted by  $\arg z$ ; the number  $r$  is the *modulus* of  $z$ , written as  $|z|$ . Notice that by Pythagoras' theorem,

$$|z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

Hence, if  $z$  is real,  $|z|$  is just the ‘usual’ modulus or absolute value of  $z$  as a real number.

Clearly, two complex numbers expressed in polar form will be equal if and only if they have equal moduli and equal arguments, i.e.

$$r \operatorname{cis} \theta = s \operatorname{cis} \phi \quad \text{iff} \quad [r = s \text{ and } \theta = \phi]$$

### Exercises 5.5

- (1) Express the following complex numbers in polar form:

$$1, -1, i, -i, 1+i, 3+4i, 5-12i$$

- (2) Express the following complex numbers in the form  $x + yi$ :

$$3 \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{4}, \quad 4 \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{6}, \quad \operatorname{cis} \frac{5\pi}{6}$$

- (3) Prove that if  $z \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $x \in \mathcal{R}$ , then  $\arg(xz) = \arg(z)$   
and  $|xz| = |x||z|$ .

- (4) Prove that  $|z|^2 = z\bar{z}$ .

- (5) Prove that  $\operatorname{Re}(z) \leq |\operatorname{Re}(z)| \leq |z|$ .

- (6) Prove that  $\operatorname{Im}(z) \leq |\operatorname{Im}(z)| \leq |z|$ .

- (7) Prove that  $|zw| = |z||w|$ .

- (8) Give an example to illustrate that  $|z + w| \neq |z| + |w|$ .

- (9) Prove that  $|\bar{z}| = |z|$ .

- (10) Prove the Triangle Law:

$$|z + w| \leq |z| + |w|$$

(Hint: write  $|z + w|^2$  as  $(z + w)(\overline{z + w})$ .)

## 5.6 Polar multiplication

Let  $z, w$  be complex numbers. In polar form, let  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$ ,  $w = s \operatorname{cis} \phi$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} zw &= (r \cos \theta + ir \sin \theta)(s \cos \phi + is \sin \phi) \\ &= rs \cos \theta \cos \phi + irs \cos \theta \sin \phi + irs \sin \theta \cos \phi + i^2 rs \sin \theta \sin \phi \\ &= rs[\cos \theta \cos \phi - \sin \theta \sin \phi] + i(\sin \theta \cos \phi + \cos \theta \sin \phi) \end{aligned}$$

Using the basic trigonometric identities for angle sums, this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} zw &= rs[\cos(\theta + \phi) + i \sin(\theta + \phi)] \\ &= rs \operatorname{cis}(\theta + \phi) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, when we multiply two complex numbers in polar form we multiply the moduli and add the arguments. (It may be that the result of adding the arguments results in an angle greater than or equal to  $2\pi$ , and in this case we can simply subtract  $2\pi$  from the answer; but this is a minor point.)

A particular case of the above multiplication rule occurs when the two complex numbers involved are identical. We then get the rule

$$(r \operatorname{cis} \theta)^2 = r^2 \operatorname{cis} 2\theta$$

In particular, if  $r = 1$ , we have

$$(\operatorname{cis} \theta)^2 = \operatorname{cis} 2\theta$$

This generalizes as follows.

**Theorem 5.6.1 (De Moivre's Theorem)** For all natural numbers  $n$ ,

$$(\operatorname{cis} \theta)^n = \operatorname{cis} n\theta$$

*Proof:* The proof is by induction on  $n$ . For  $n = 1$  there is nothing to prove. We assume the result for  $n$  and prove it for  $n + 1$ . We have, using the result for  $n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^{n+1} &= (\operatorname{cis} \theta)^n (\operatorname{cis} \theta) \\ &= (\operatorname{cis} n\theta) (\operatorname{cis} \theta) \\ &= (\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta) (\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) \\ &= \cos n\theta \cos \theta + i \sin \theta \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta \cos \theta + i^2 \sin n\theta \sin \theta \\ &= (\cos n\theta \cos \theta - \sin n\theta \sin \theta) + i(\sin \theta \cos n\theta + \cos \theta \sin n\theta) \\ &= \cos(n\theta + \theta) + i \sin(n\theta + \theta) \\ &= \cos(n+1)\theta + i \sin(n+1)\theta \end{aligned}$$

The theorem is thus proved by induction.  $\square$

We shall use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate  $(1 + i)^{10}$ . In polar form,

$$1 + i = \sqrt{2} \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4} \right)$$

By De Moivre's theorem,

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1+i)^{10} &= (\sqrt{2})^{10} \left( \cos \frac{10\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{10\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 2^5 \left( \cos \left( 2\pi + \frac{2\pi}{4} \right) + i \sin \left( 2\pi + \frac{2\pi}{4} \right) \right) \\
 &= 2^5 \left( \cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\
 &= 2^5 (0 + i1) \\
 &= 2^5 i
 \end{aligned}$$

We may also use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate roots. Let us, for example, try to find the complex cube roots of 1. Suppose  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$  is a complex cube root of 1. Then by De Moivre's theorem

$$z^3 = r^3 \operatorname{cis} 3\theta = 1$$

Equating moduli, we get

$$r^3 = |1| = 1$$

Thus, as  $r$  is a positive real,  $r = 1$ , and hence  $z = \operatorname{cis} \theta$ . We must determine  $\theta$ . We do this by equating real and imaginary parts. We have:

$$\cos 3\theta + i \sin 3\theta = 1 + 0i$$

Hence

$$\cos 3\theta = 1, \quad \sin 3\theta = 0$$

Now, we shall be interested only in values of  $\theta$  between 0 and  $2\pi$  (i.e.  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ ). Hence we need only look at values of  $3\theta$  between 0 and  $6\pi$ . In this region, the only solutions to the above equations are

$$3\theta = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi$$

Hence

$$\theta = 0, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}$$

For  $\theta = 0$  we get the root

$$\operatorname{cis} 0 = 1$$

For  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  we get the root

$$\operatorname{cis} \frac{2\pi}{3} = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

For  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$  we get the root

$$\operatorname{cis} \frac{4\pi}{3} = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

(Notice that these last two roots are complex conjugates.)

Another example. Let us find the square roots of  $1 + i$ . Let  $z$  be a square root of  $1 + i$ , and write  $z$  as  $z = r \operatorname{cis} \theta$ . By De Moivre's theorem,

$$(*) \quad z^2 = r^2 \operatorname{cis} 2\theta = 1 + i$$

Equating moduli,

$$r^2 = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2}$$

Hence  $r = \sqrt[4]{2}$ , and so  $z = \sqrt[4]{2} \operatorname{cis} \theta$ . Thus by equation (\*),

$$\operatorname{cis} 2\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}i$$

Equating real and imaginary parts,  $\cos 2\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ ,  $\sin 2\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

Thus, to obtain  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ , we have the solutions

$$2\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{9\pi}{4}$$

giving

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{9\pi}{8}$$

Hence the roots are  $\sqrt[4]{2} \operatorname{cis} \frac{\pi}{8}$  and  $\sqrt[4]{2} \operatorname{cis} \frac{9\pi}{8}$ . In this case let us leave them in this form.

One point to notice is that we divided out by the modulus before evaluating the argument. This is important, since sine and cosine only take values between  $-1$  and  $+1$ . (Failure to divide out the modulus will not cause any problems, of course, providing we remember to carry it as a coefficient throughout the evaluation. However, it is simpler to adopt the procedure above.)

### Exercises 5.6

- (1) What is the locus of the point  $z$  in the complex plane which satisfies the equation  $|z| = 1$ ? (That is, describe the set  $\{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid |z| = 1\}$ .)
- (2) Let  $w = \operatorname{cis} \theta$  for some fixed angle  $\theta$ . Let  $U = \{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid |z| = 1\}$ . Show that the following defines a function  $f: U \rightarrow U$ :

$$f(z) = wz$$

Is  $f$  bijective? Describe in geometric terms the behavior of the function  $f$ .

- (3) Use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate the following:
- (a)  $(1 - i)^5$
  - (b)  $[8 + 8\sqrt{3}i]^7$
- (4) Use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate the cube roots of  $i$  and  $-i$ .
- (5) Use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate the square roots of  $8 + 8\sqrt{3}i$ .
- (6) Use De Moivre's theorem to evaluate the complex 6th roots of 729.
- (7) Without actually calculating the roots in an  $a + bi$  form, plot on the complex plane the square roots of  $\pm 1$ ,  $\pm i$ ,  $\pm(1 \pm i)/\sqrt{2}$ .
- (8) Plot on the complex plane the 6th roots of 1.
- (9) Obtain a formula (in terms of  $n$ ) for the  $n$ th roots of 1.
- (10) Both by direct calculation and by reference to a diagram, prove that if  $z, w$  are the two non-real cube roots of 1, then  $z^2 = w$  and  $w^2 = z$ .

## 5.7 Algebraic equations

It is well known that in  $\mathcal{R}$  the quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

has a solution iff  $b^2 \geq 4ac$ , in which case the roots are given by the formula

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \quad (a \neq 0)$$

Consider now a similar equation in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$az^2 + bz + c = 0$$

(where we allow  $a, b, c$  to be complex also). The algebra which leads to the above quadratic formula still works. Hence the roots are given by

$$z = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

But now there is no condition restricting the validity of this formula. The equation always has a solution, and the formula always gives the root.

For example, consider the equation

$$z^2 + z + 1 = 0$$

Its roots are given by

$$\begin{aligned} z &= \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 4 \cdot 1 \cdot 1}}{2 \cdot 1} \\ &= \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{-3}}{2} \\ &= \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{3}i}{2} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{-3}}{2}i \end{aligned}$$

(You may check this by substituting back in the original equation.)

Or consider the cubic equation

$$2z^3 + 3z^2 + 2z + 3 = 0$$

This factorises as

$$(z^2 + 1)(2z + 3) = 0$$

Hence the roots are  $z = i$ ,  $z = -i$ ,  $z = -3/2$ .

The general point is this. Given a quadratic or cubic equation (or worse), we can set about finding its roots in the usual manner, but now we are not prevented from being able to form the square root of a negative number (since  $\sqrt{-r} = \sqrt{r}i$ ). Moreover, the coefficients may also be complex.

In fact there is a general result here. Consider any complex polynomial equation (with complex coefficients)

$$a_n z^n + a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 z + a_0 = 0$$

Then this equation always has a (complex) root. This basic result is known as the *fundamental theorem of algebra*. It is truly remarkable. For what it amounts to is a proof of the fact that our search for a number system which is adequate for mathematics is complete; a fact which experience would not have led us to expect. For consider once more our progress. Starting with  $\mathcal{N}$ , we observed that  $\mathcal{N}$  does not allow us to solve all equations of the form  $x + m = n$ . So we extend  $\mathcal{N}$  to  $\mathcal{Z}$ . But in  $\mathcal{Z}$  we cannot solve all equations of the form  $mx = n$ . So we extend  $\mathcal{Z}$  to  $\mathcal{Q}$ . In  $\mathcal{Q}$  we cannot solve all equations of the form  $x^2 = k$  (for  $k \geq 0$ ), so then we extend  $\mathcal{Q}$  to  $\mathcal{R}$ . One might by now expect that this procedure will continue indefinitely. But no, if we make one more step now, essentially introducing just the single new root of the equation  $x^2 + 1 = 0$ , then all equations have solutions. In fact much more is the case. The study of complex numbers is one of the

most beautiful and elegant branches of mathematics, the full appreciation of which can only be gained by a detailed investigation of the subject. This gateway into one of the most fascinating parts of mathematics forms a suitable place for us to end our account.

### Exercises 5.7

(1) Solve the following equations:

(a)  $4z^2 + z + 9 = 0$

(b)  $z^3 - (5 + i)z^2 + (6 + 5i)z - 6i = 0$  (Hint: try  $z = i$ .)

(c)  $z^2 - (5 - i)z - 5i = 0$

(2) Express the following polynomial expressions as a product of linear factors:

(a)  $z^2 - 1$

(b)  $z^2 + 1$

(c)  $z^4 - 1$

(d)  $z^4 + 1$

(3) Consider the polynomial equation

$$z^n + a_{n-1}z^{n-1} + \dots + a_1z + a_0 = 0$$

where  $a_{n-1}, \dots, a_0$  are real. Prove that if  $z$  is a root of this equation, then so is  $\bar{z}$ .

(4) Consider the equation  $z^2 - 2z + 5 = 0$ . Given that one root of this equation is  $z = 1 + 2i$ , what is the other root?

(5) Use De Moivre's theorem to prove that the equation

$$az^n + b = 0$$

has a complex root for any complex values of  $a, b$  ( $a \neq 0$ ).



# Where the answers to selected exercises would be

Many current books of this nature provide the student with a selection of answers to the exercises, and several of the Colby students who worked through this book in draft form suggested that I include such a section. After thinking about it at some length (and yes, I know all the arguments in favor of an answer section), I decided against it. The reason is this. This book is intended to introduce students to the world of real, present-day, pure mathematics, and to prepare them for working in that discipline. But for the working mathematician, there is no answer in the back of the book — indeed, ‘the book’ may not yet have been written. Nor do many advanced-level books provide answers in the back (or colored highlighting of important points for that matter). The sooner the student learns to live with that fact, the better (for the student). I want students to emerge from working through this book reasonably well prepared to learn and do some interesting mathematics. Better then that the process of weaning off from the pre-packaged material of high school and first-year college mathematics courses takes place now rather than later, when the going is considerably tougher. (Though the student working through this book will doubtless feel it can hardly get any tougher!) Of course, there is nothing to prevent the student seeking ideas, and even answers, in other books, or by asking colleagues or teachers. Professional mathematicians do that all the time. So should anyone working through this book. But then it is *you* who has found the result, not *me*.

# LIST OF SYMBOLS

$\wedge$  , 3

$\&$  , 3

$\vee$  , 4

$\neg$  , 4

$\Rightarrow$  , 6–9

$\nRightarrow$  , 7–8

$\Leftrightarrow$  , 9

$\neq$  , 11

T, F , 12–13

$\exists$  , 21

$(\exists x \in \mathcal{N}), \text{etc.}$  , 22, 28ff

$(\exists p, q \in \mathcal{N}), \text{etc.}$  , 22

$\forall$  , 22

$(\forall x \in \mathcal{N}), \text{etc.}$  , 23, 28ff

$\exists!$  , 32

$\sum_{i=1}^n a_i$  , 43

$|x|$  , 44, 76, 134–5

$a|b$  , 48

$\in$  , 52

$\mathcal{N}$  , 52

$\mathcal{Z}$  , 52

$\mathcal{Q}$  , 52

$\mathcal{R}$  , 52

$\mathcal{R}^+$  , 52

$\{a, \dots, b\}$  , 53

$\{a, b, \dots\}$  , 53

$\{x \in X \mid A(x)\}$  , 53

$\emptyset$  , 54

$\subseteq$  , 55

$\subset$  , 55

$\mathcal{P}(x)$  , 55

$\cup$  , 56

$\cap$  , 58

$A'$  , 58

$\notin$  , 58

$A - B$  , 63

$(a, b), [a, b]$  , 65

$(a, b], [a, b)$  , 65

$\infty$  , 65

$\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  , 66

$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i, \bigcap_{i \in I} A_i$  , 67

$\bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i, \bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i$  , 69

$\cup \mathcal{F}, \cap \mathcal{F}$  , 69

$(a, b)$  , 70

$A \times B$  , 71

$f : A \rightarrow B$  , 73, 83

$f(a)$  , 74

$I_A$  , 77

$\chi_A$  , 77

$f[X]$  , 84

$f \circ g$  , 87

$f^{-1}$  , 88

$aRb$  , 101

$a \longrightarrow b$  , 109

$[a]$  , 111

$\{a_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  , 122

$a_n \rightarrow a$  , 123

$\operatorname{Re}(z), \operatorname{Im}(z)$  , 127–8

$i$  , 129

$\bar{z}$  , 132

# INDEX

absolute value, 44ff, 76  
all, 22ff  
and, 2ff  
antecedent, 7  
antisymmetric, 108  
arbitrary element, 38  
Archimedean property, 121  
argument, function, 74, 83  
argument, complex number, 134  
associative law, sets, 59  
asymmetric, 108  
axiom, 50

biconditional, 8  
bijection, 83, 88  
binary relation, 100ff

Cartesian product, 70ff  
causation, 6  
characteristic function, 77  
cis, 134  
closed interval, 65  
closed sentence, 25  
codomain, 75, 83, 101  
commutative law, sets, 59  
complement, 57  
complementation laws, 59  
completeness property, 120ff  
complex conjugate, 132  
complex number, 126ff  
complex plane, 127ff  
composition function, 87  
conditional, 6ff  
conjugate, 132  
conjunction, 5  
connective, 17

consequent, 7  
constant function, 77  
contradiction, 18  
contradiction proof, 35  
contrapositive, 19  
contrapositive proof, 35  
converse, 19  
countable, 95

De Moivre's Theorem, 136  
De Morgan laws, 59ff  
denial, 14  
density of rationals, 118  
denumerable, 91ff  
diagonal argument, 96ff  
difference, sets, 63  
digraph, 109ff  
directed graph, 109ff  
disjoint, 57, 101  
disjunction, 5  
distributive law, sets, 59  
divisibility, 48  
division, 46ff  
division theorem, 46ff  
domain, 75, 83, 101

edge, 109  
element, 52  
empty set, 54  
equality, functions, 79ff  
equality, sets, 54ff  
equipollent, 98ff, 115  
equivalence class, 111ff  
equivalence relation, 110ff  
equivalent, 8, 18, 26  
existential quantifier, 23

- exists, 21ff
- finite, 92
- first-order logic, 25
- for all, 22ff
- formula, 17
- function, 73ff, 83, 116ff
- function equality, 79ff
- Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, 140
- Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic, 40
- glb, 122
- Goldbach Conjecture, 43
- graph, 109ff
- greatest lower bound, 122
- identity function, 77
- if, 11
- iff, 12
- image, 74
- imaginary axis, 128
- imaginary number, 129
- imaginary part, 127
- implicit quantification, 27
- implies, 5ff
- inclusion function, 81
- inclusive or, 4
- index set, 66
- indexed family, 66
- induction, 38ff
- infix notation, 101
- injection, 81ff
- injective, 81ff
- integers, 46ff
- intersection, 57ff, 67ff
- interval, 65
- inverse function, 87ff
- invertible function, 87ff
- least upper bound, 119
- limit, 123
- logic, first-order, 25
- logic, predicate, 25
- logic, propositional, 16ff
- logical connective, 17
- logically equivalent, 8, 18
- lower bound, 122
- lub, 119
- map, mapping, 84
- material conditional, 6ff
- mathematical induction, 38ff
- mathematical object, 1
- mathematical statement, 1
- mathematical truth, 49ff
- member, 52
- mod, 76
- modulus, 76, 134
- necessary, 12
- negation, 5ff, 10ff, 29ff
- non-constructive proof, 38
- not, 4
- null set, 54
- one-one, 81ff
- only if, 11
- onto, 82ff
- open interval, 65
- open sentence, 25
- or, 3ff
- ordered pair, 70
- pair, 70
- partial order, 109
- partition, 112ff
- polar coordinates, 134
- polar representation, 134
- positive statement, 29ff
- postfix notation, 101
- postulate, 50
- power set, 55
- pre-image, 82
- predicate logic, 25

- prefix notation, 101
- prime number, 1, 49
- principle of mathematical induction, 39ff
- projection, 77
- proof, 34ff
- proper subset, 55
- proposition, 16
- propositional form, 17
- propositional logic, 16ff
- propositional symbol, 17
  
- quantifier, 21, 25ff
- quotient, 46ff
  
- range, 84
- rational number, 118ff
- real axis, 128
- real line, 117ff
- real number, 117ff
- real part, 127
- reductio ad absurdum*, 35
- reflexive, 103, 110
- relation, 100ff, 106
- remainder, 46ff
  
- semantics, 16
- sequence, 122
- set, 52ff
- set difference, 63
- set equality, 54ff
- statement, 1
- subset, 55
- sufficient, 11
- surjection, 82ff
- surjective, 82ff
- symmetric, 103, 110
- syntax, 16
  
- tautology, 18
- tend to a limit, 123
- tend to infinity, 125
- transformation, 84
- transitive, 104, 110
- triangle inequality, 45
- triple, 72
- truth, 49ff
- truth function, 17
- truth set, 26
- truth table, 12ff
- tuple, 72
  
- uncountable, 95ff
- underlying set, 101
- union, 56ff, 67ff
- universal quantifier, 23
- universal set, 56
- universe, 25
- unordered pair, 70
- upper bound, 119
  
- value, 74, 83
- Venn diagram, 57
- vertex, 109
  
- well-formed formula, 17
- whenever, 12